# ıılıılıı cısco

# Aggregation Services Router (ASR) 1000 Series

# **Security Target**

**Revision 0.19** 

May 2011

# **Table of Contents**

April 2011 Table of Contents	. 1
Table of Contents	. 2
List of Tables	. 4
1 SECURITY TARGET INTRODUCTION	. 6
1.1 ST and TOE Reference	. 6
1.2 Acronyms and Abbreviations	. 6
1.3 TOE Overview	. 8
1.3.1 TOE Product Type	. 8
1.3.2 Supported non-TOE Hardware/ Software/ Firmware	. 8
1.4 TOE DESCRIPTION	. 9
1.5 Physical Scope of the TOE	11
1.5.1 Embedded Services Processor (5Gbps, 10Gbps, 20Gbps)	12
1.5.2 Route Processor (RP1, RP2)	12
1.5.3 Shared Port Adaptors	12
1.6 Logical Scope of the TOE	12
1.6.1 Identification & Authentication	13
1.6.2 Security Management	13
1.6.3 VPN Router and/or Firewall Information Flow Control	14
1 6 4 Trusted Path/Channel	15
165 Cryptography	15
1.6.6 Security Audit	16
167 High Availability	16
1.7 TOF Evaluated Configuration	16
1.7 1 Evaluated Configuration	17
2 Conformance Claims	10
2 1 Common Criteria Conformance Claim	10
2.1 Common Criteria Conformance	10
2.2 I Totection Frome Comomance.	19
2.2.1 Frotection Profile Additions	19
2.2.2 Protection Profile Conformance Claim Patienele	19 20
2.5 Protection Profile Comornance Claim Rationale	20
2.3.1 TOE Appropriateness	20
2.3.2 TOE Security Problem Definition Consistency	20
2.3.3 Statement of Security Objectives Consistency	23
2.3.4 Statement of Security Requirements Consistency	25
3 SECURITY PROBLEM DEFINITION	32
3.1 Assumptions	32
3.2 Threats	32
3.3 Organizational Security Policies	34
4 SECURITY OBJECTIVES	35
4.1 Security Objectives for the TOE	35
4.2 Security Objectives for the Environment	37
5 SECURITY REQUIREMENTS	38
5.1 Conventions	38
5.2 TOE Security Functional Requirements	38
5.2.1 Security audit (FAU)	40

5.2	.2 Cryptographic Support (FCS)	50
5.2	.3 User data protection (FDP)	52
5.2	.4 Identification and authentication (FIA)	59
5.2	.5 Security management (FMT)	60
5.2	.6 Protection of the TSF (FPT)	66
5.2	.7 Resource Utilization (FRU)	69
5.2	.8 TOE Access (FTA)	69
5.2	.9 Trusted Path/Channels (FTP)	70
5.2	.10 Extended Components Definition	72
5.3	IT Environment Security Functional Requirements	77
5.4	TOE SFR Hierarchies and Dependencies	79
5.5	Security Assurance Requirements	82
5.5	.1 SAR Requirements	82
5.5	.2 Security Assurance Requirements Rationale	83
5.6	Assurance Measures	83
6 TO	E Summary Specification	85
6.1	TOE Security Functional Requirement Measures	85
6.2	TOE Bypass and Interference/Logical Tampering Protection Measures	100
7 RA	TIONALE	102
7.1	Rationale for TOE Security Objectives	102
7.2	Rationale for the Security Objectives for the Environment	114
7.3	Rationale for SFRs-SARs/TOE Objectives	114
7.4	RATIONALE FOR THE SECURITY OBJECTIVES AND SECURITY	
FUNG	CTIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE ENVIRONMENT	132
Annex A	: References	133
7.5	References	133

# List of Tables

А	Table 1: ST and TOE Identification	6
В	Table 2: Acronyms	6
С	Table 3: IT Environment Components	9
D	Table 4: TOE Component Descriptions	9
Е	Table 5: Physical Scope of the TOE	11
F	Table 6: Physical Scope of the TOE	11
G	Table 7: IPSec Related Cryptography	15
Н	Table 8: SSHv2 Related Cryptography	15
I	Table 9: Excluded Functionality	18
J	Table 10: Protection Profiles	19
К	Table 11: Assumption Protection Profile Conformance	20
L	Table 12: OSP Protection Profile Conformance	21
Μ	Table 13: Threat Protection Profile Conformance	21
Ν	Table 14: Objective Protection Profile Conformance	23
0	Table 15: SFR Protection Profile Conformance	25
Р	Table 16 TOE Assumptions	32
Q	Table 17 Threats	32
R	Table 18 Organizational Security Policies	34
S	Table 19 Security Objectives for the TOE	35
Т	Table 20 Security Objectives for the Environment	37
U	Table 21 Security Functional Requirements	38
V	Table 22 Auditable Events Table	41
W	Table 23 Security Functional Requirements	77
Х	Table 24: TOE Security Functional Requirements Dependency Rationale	79
Y	Table 25: Assurance Measures	82
Z	Table 26: Assurance Measures	83
AA	Table 27: How TOE SFRs Measures	85
BB	Table 28: Threat/Policies/Objectives/SFRs Mappings/Rationale	02
CC	Table 29: Assumptions/Objectives Mappings/Rationale	14
DD	Table 30: Objective to SFR Mappings	14
EE	Table 31: References	133

#### **DOCUMENT INTRODUCTION**

#### **Prepared By:**

Cisco Systems, Inc. 170 West Tasman Dr. San Jose, CA 95134

This document provides the basis for an evaluation of a specific Target of Evaluation (TOE), the Aggregation Services Router (ASR) 1000 Series. This Security Target (ST) defines a set of assumptions about the aspects of the environment, a list of threats that the product intends to counter, a set of security objectives, a set of security requirements, and the IT security functions provided by the TOE which meet the set of requirements.

#### **REVISION HISTORY**

<u>Rev</u>	<u>Date</u>	<b>Description</b>
0.01	February 2009	Initial Draft
0.02	March 2009	Updated for BU comments
0.03	May 2009	Updated for Lab comments
0.04	May 2009	Updated for Lab comments 2
0.05	June 2009	Updated for BU comments
0.06	June 2009	Updated for BU clarifications
0.07	July 2009	General editing: formatting, typos.
		Expanded acronym table.
0.08	July 2009	Updated to address iVOR comments
0.09	July 2009	Updated to include SPAs in TOE boundary
0.10	Oct. 2009	Updated to address VOR comments
0.11	June 2010	Updated to address ADV ETR verdicts
0.12	June 2010	Updated for consistency with testing and OPE
0.13	September 2010	Updated for AGD submission
0.14	October 2010	Updated for testing, ADV ETR verdicts
0.15	October 2010	Updated for AGD ETR
0.16	January 2011	Updated for ATE findings
0.17	March 2011	Updated for ATE findings
0.18	April 2011	Updated for the ATE ETR
0.19	May 2011	Updated for tVOR

# **1 SECURITY TARGET INTRODUCTION**

The Security Target contains the following sections:

- Security Target Introduction [Section 1]
- Conformance Claims [Section 2]
- Security Problem Definition [Section 3]
- Security Objectives [Section 4]
- IT Security Requirements [Section 5]
- TOE Summary Specification [Section 6]
- Rationale [Section 7]

The structure and content of this ST comply with the requirements specified in the Common Criteria (CC), Part 1, Annex A, and Part 3, Chapter 4.

#### 1.1 ST and TOE Reference

This section provides information needed to identify and control this ST and its TOE. This ST targets Medium Robustness.

ST Title	Cisco Aggregation Services Router (ASR) 1000 Series Security Target
ST Version	0.19
Publication Date	May 2011
Vendor and ST Author	Cisco Systems, Inc.
TOE Reference	Cisco Aggregation Services Router (ASR) 1000 Series
<b>TOE Hardware Models</b>	ASR 1002f, ASR 1002, ASR 1004, ASR 1006
<b>TOE Software Version</b>	IOS XE 2.4.2t
ST Evaluation Status	In Evaluation
Keywords	Switch, Data Protection, Authentication, VPN, Router, Firewall, Encryption

Table 1: ST and TOE Identification

#### 1.2 Acronyms and Abbreviations

The following acronyms and abbreviations are used in this Security Target:

#### Table 2: Acronyms

Acronyms / Abbreviations	Definition
AAA	Administration, Authorization, and Accounting
ACK	Acknowledgement
ACL	Access Control List
AES	Advanced Encryption Standard
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
ASR	Aggregation Services Router
BGP	Border Gateway Protocol
CC	Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation
CCEVS	Common Criteria Evaluation and Validation Scheme
CCM	Counter with Cipher Block Chaining-Message Authentication Code
CCMB	Common Criteria Maintenance Board
CEM	Common Evaluation Methodology for Information Technology Security

Acronyms / Abbreviations	Definition			
CLI	Command Line Interface			
СМ	Configuration Management			
CRL	Certificate and Certificate Revocation List			
CSP	Critical Security Parameter			
DH	Diffie-Hellman			
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol			
EAL	Evaluation Assurance Level			
EEPROM	Electrically Erasable Programmable Read-Only Memory			
ESP	Embedded Services Processor			
FIPS	Federal Information Processing Standard			
GDOI	Group Domain of Interpretation			
HMAC	Hashed Message Authentication Code			
HTTPS	Hyper-Text Transport Protocol Secure			
ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol			
IOS	Internet Operating System			
ISSU	In-Service Software Upgrade			
IKE	Internet Key Exchange			
IP	Internet Protocol			
IPSec	IP Security			
IS-IS	Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System			
IT	Information Technology			
KDF	Key Derivation Function			
MAC	Message Authentication Code			
MPLS	Multiprotocol Label Switching			
MRPP	Medium Robustness Protection Profile			
NIC	Network Interface Card			
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology			
OS	Operating System			
OCSP	Online Certificate Status Protocol			
OSP	Organizational Security Policy			
OSPF	Open Shortest Path First			
PIM	Protocol Independent Multicast			
POS	Packet Over Sonet			
PP	Protection Profile			
pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	U.S. Government Protection Profile for Traffic Filter Firewall For Medium Robustness			
	Environments			
pp_router_mr_v1.1	U.S. Government Router Protection Profile For Medium Robustness Environments			
pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	U.S. Government Virtual Private Network (VPN) Boundary Gateway Protection Profile			
	For Medium Robustness Environments			
PRNG	Pseudo Random Number Generator			
QoS	Quality of Service			
rDSA	RSA Digital Signature Algorithm			
RFC	Request for Comment			
RIP	Routing Information Protocol			
RNG	Random Number Generator			
RP	Route Processor			
KSA	Rivest, Shamir, and Adleman			
KU	Kack Unit			
SA	Security Association			
SEQ	Sequence			
SFP	Security Function Policy			
SFR	Security Functional Requirement			

Acronyms / Abbreviations	Definition
SHS	Secure Hash Standard
SPA	Shared Port Adaptor
SSH	Secure Shell
ST	Security Target
ТСР	Transport Control Protocol
TCP/IP	Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol
TDEA	Triple Data Encryption Algorithm
TDES	Triple Data Encryption Standard
TOE	Target of Evaluation
TSC	TSF Scope of Control
TSF	TOE Security Function
TLS	Transport Layer Security
TSFI	TOE Security Function Interface
TSP	TOE Security Policy
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
VLAN	Virtual Local Area Network
VPN	Virtual Private Network
VRF	Virtual Routing and Forwarding
WAN	Wide Area Network

#### 1.3 TOE Overview

The TOE is a purpose-built, wide-area network (WAN) routing platform that includes firewall and VPN functionality. The TOE includes four (4) chassis options, ASR 1002, ASR 1002f, ASR 1004, and ASR 1006.

#### 1.3.1 TOE Product Type

The Cisco ASR 1000 Series Router (ASR 1002, ASR 1002f, ASR 1004, ASR 1006) delivers embedded hardware acceleration for multiple Cisco IOS® XE Software services. In addition, the Cisco ASR 1000 Series Router features redundant Route and Embedded Services Processors, as well as software-based redundancy.

In support of the routing capabilities, the Cisco ASR 1000 Series Router provides IPSec connection capabilities for VPN enabled clients connecting through the Cisco ASR 1000 Series Router. The Cisco ASR 1000 Series Router also supports firewall capabilities. The ASR 1000 Series Router is a single-device security and routing solution for protecting the WAN entry point into the network. Zone-based firewall allows grouping of physical and virtual interfaces into zones to simplify logical network topology. The creation of these zones facilitates the application of firewall policies on a zone-to-zone basis, instead of having to configure policies separately on each interface.

#### 1.3.2 Supported non-TOE Hardware/ Software/ Firmware

The TOE supports (in some cases optionally) the following hardware, software, and firmware in its environment:

IT Environment Component	Required	Usage/Purpose Description for TOE performance
VPN Peer	No	This includes any peer with which the TOE participates in VPN communications. VPN peers may be any device or software client that supports IPSec communications. Both VPN clients and VPN gateways are considered VPN peers by the TOE.

#### Table 3: IT Environment Components

## 1.4 TOE DESCRIPTION

This section provides an overview of the Aggregation Services Router (ASR) 1000 Series Target of Evaluation (TOE). This section also defines the TOE components included in the evaluated configuration of the TOE. The TOE consists of a number of components including:

- Chassis: The TOE chassis includes 2-RU, 4-RU, and 6-RU form factors. The chassis is the component of the TOE in which all other TOE components are housed.
- Embedded Services Processor (ESP): The Cisco ASR 1000 Series ESPs are responsible for the data-plane processing tasks, and all network traffic flows through them.
- Route Processor (RP): The Cisco ASR 1000 Series RPs provide the advanced routing capabilities of the TOE. They also monitor and manage the other components in the Cisco ASR 1000 Series Aggregation Services.
- Shared Port Adaptors (SPAs): Used for connecting to networks. These SPAs interface with the TOE to provide the network interfaces that will be used to communicate on the network.

Hardware	Cisco ASR 1002f	Cisco ASR 1002	Cisco ASR 1004	Cisco ASR 1006
Model				
Software Model	Cisco IOS XE	Cisco IOS XE	Cisco IOS XE	Cisco IOS XE
	Version 2.4.2t	Version 2.4.2t	Version 2.4.2t	Version 2.4.2t
Size	2-Rack Units	2-Rack Units	4-Rack Units	6-Rack Units
Power	DC power: 590W	DC power: 590W	DC power: 1020W	DC power: 1700W
	AC Power: 560W	AC Power: 560W	AC Power: 960W	AC Power: 1600W
Supported	Integrated ESP	ESP5	ESP10	Dual ESP10
ESPs	_	ESP10	ESP20	Dual ESP20
Supported ESP	2.5 Gbps	ESP5 – 5 Gbps	ESP10 – 10 Gbps	ESP10 – 10 Gbps
Throughput		ESP10 – 10 Gbps	ESP20 – 20 Gbps	ESP20 – 20 Gbps
Supported ESP	Freescale 8543	Freescale 8543	Freescale 8543 (both	Freescale 8543 (both
Processors		(both ESPs)	ESPs)	ESPs)
Supported RPs	Integrated RP	Integrated RP	RP1	Dual RP1
			RP2	Dual RP2

Table 4:	TOE	Component	Descriptions
----------	-----	-----------	--------------

Supported RP	Freescale 8548	Freescale 8548	RP1: Freescale 8548	RP1: Freescale 8548			
Processors			RP2: Intel Wolfdale-DP	RP2: Intel Wolfdale-			
O				DP			
Supported	Cisco 8-Port Channelized T1/E1 Shared Port Adapter (SPA-8XCHT1/E1)						
(all TOF model	Cisco 4-Port Channelized T3 (DS0) Shared Port Adapter (SPA-4XCT3/DS0)						
support all	Cisco 2-Port Channelized T3 (DS0) Shared Port Adapter (SPA-2XCT3/DS0)						
SPAs)	1XCUSTM1/OC2)	Cisco 1-port Channelized STM-1/OC-3c to DS0 Shared Port Adapter (SPA-					
	IACHSIMI/UUS) Ciasa 2 Dant Clash Channel T2/E2 Shared Dant Adapter (SDA 2VT2/E2)						
	Cisco 4 Port Clear C	hannal T2/E2 Shared P	ort Adapter (SPA-2A13/E)	2)			
	Cisco 4-Port Serial It	13/100 Shared Port A	lanter (SPA-/XT-Serial)	))			
	Cisco 4-Port 10BASI	E-T/100BASE Fast Eth	ernet Shared Port Adapter	(SPA-4X1FE-TX-V2)			
	Cisco 8-Port 10BASI	E-T/100BASE Fast Eth	ernet Shared Port Adapter	(SPA-8X1FE-TX-V2)			
	Cisco 2-Port Gigabit	Ethernet Shared Port A	dapter (SPA-2X1GE-V2)	(~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~			
	Cisco 5-Port Gigabit	Ethernet Shared Port A	Adapter (SPA-5X1GE-V2)				
	Cisco 8-Port Gigabit	Ethernet Shared Port A	dapter (SPA-8X1GE-V2)				
	Cisco 10-Port Gigabi	t Ethernet Shared Port	Adapter (SPA-10X1GE-V2	2)			
	Cisco 1-Port 10 Giga	bit Ethernet Shared Por	rt Adapter (SPA-1X10GE-	L-V2)			
	Cisco 2-Port OC3c/S	TM-1c POS Shared Po	rt Adapter (SPA-2XOC3-P	OS)			
	Cisco 4-Port OC3c/S	TM-1c POS Shared Po	rt Adapter (SPA-4XOC3-P	POS)			
	Cisco 8-port OC3/ST	M4 POS Shared Port A	Adapter (SPA-8XOC3-POS				
	Cisco 1-Port OC12c/	STM-4c POS Shared P	ort Adapter (SPA-1XOC12	2-POS)			
	Cisco 2-port OC12/S	TM4 POS Shared Port	Adapter (SPA-2XOC12-PC	$(\mathbf{JS})$			
	Cisco 4-port OC12/S	TM4 POS Snared Port	Adapter (SPA-4AUC12-PC	(JS)			
	Cisco 1 port OC12/S	TM4 FOS SFA Silaleu TM16 POS/PPP Shara	d Port Adapter (SPA-0AOC	(12-FOS)			
	Cisco 2-port OC48/S	TM16 POS/RPR Share	ed Port Adapter (SPA-2XO	C48POS/RPR)			
	Cisco 4-port OC48/S	TM16 POS/RPR Share	ed Port Adapter (SPA-4XO	C48POS/RPR)			
	Cisco 1-Port OC-192	c/STM-64c POS/RPR	Shared Port Adapter with X	KFP Optics (SPA-			
	OC192POS-XFP)		I				
SPA Slots	1 SPA slot	3 SPA slots	8 SPA slots	12 SPA slots			
Interfaces	Port Adapter	Port Adapter	Port Adapter Interface	Port Adapter			
	Interface	Interface (3)	(8)	Interface (12)			
	Coursel Devi	Consta Dest	Constant Deve	Constant Devel			
	Console Port	Console Port	Console Port	Console Port			
	Auxiliary Port	Auxiliary Port	Auxiliary Port	Auxiliary Port (2)			
	10/100 DITC	10/100 DITC	10/100 Man	10/100 DITS			
	10/100 BITS	10/100 BITS	10/100 Management	10/100 BITS			
	Ethernet Port	Ethernet Port	Ethernet Port	Ethernet Port (2)			
	10/100	10/100	10/100 BITS Ethernet	10/100 Management			
	Management	Management	Port (1)	Ethernet Port (2)			
	Ethernet Port	Ethernet Port	(-)	(_)			
				USB Ports (4)			
	USB Port	USB Port	USB Ports (2)				
	GigE Ports (4)	GigE Ports (4)					
Hardware	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	Supported			
Redundancy Supported 2							
Supported?							

## 1.5 Physical Scope of the TOE

The TOE is a hardware and software solution that makes up the Aggregation Services Router (ASR) 1000 Series Router. The TOE is comprised of the following:

TOE Configuration	Hardware Configurations	Software Version
ASR 1002f	No configuration options	IOS XE 2.4.2t software
		running on a hardened
		version of Linux Kernel
		2.6.8.
ASR 1002	ESP5 or ESP10	IOS XE 2.4.2t software
		running on a hardened
		version of Linux Kernel
		2.6.8.
ASR 1004	RP 1 or RP 2	IOS XE 2.4.2t software
	ESP10 or ESP20	running on a hardened
		version of Linux Kernel
		2.6.8.
ASR 1006	RP 1 or RP 2	IOS XE 2.4.2t software
	Dual ESP10 or ESP20	running on a hardened
		version of Linux Kernel
		2.6.8.

 Table 5: Physical Scope of the TOE

As identified above, there are several configurations available for each TOE hardware model (ASR 1002, ASR 1002f, ASR 1004, ASR 1006). Each model supports one or more Embedded Services Processors (ESP) and one or more Router Processors (RP). Additionally, each TOE hardware model is configured to include one or more SPAs to facilitate network connectivity. The following table identifies the number of SPAs supported by each TOE hardware model and identifies the SPAs included within the TOE.

Table 6:	Physical	Scope	of the	TOE
----------	----------	-------	--------	-----

TOE	SPA Slots	TOE SPAs
Configuration		
ASR 1002f	1 SPA slot	Cisco 8-Port Channelized T1/E1 Shared Port Adapter
ASR 1002	3 SPA slot	Cisco 4-Port Channelized T3 (DS0) Shared Port Adapter
ASR 1004	8 SPA slot	Cisco 2-Port Channelized T3 (DS0) Shared Port Adapter
		Cisco 1-port Channelized STM-1/OC-3c to DS0 Shared Port Adapter
		Cisco 2-Port Clear Channel T3/E3 Shared Port Adapter
ASR 1006	12 SPA slot	Cisco 4-Port Clear Channel T3/E3 Shared Port Adapter
		Cisco 4-Port Serial Interface Shared Port Adapter
		Cisco 4-Port 10BASE-T/100BASE Fast Ethernet Shared Port Adapter
		Cisco 8-Port 10BASE-T/100BASE Fast Ethernet Shared Port Adapter
		Cisco 2-Port Gigabit Ethernet Shared Port Adapter
		Cisco 5-Port Gigabit Ethernet Shared Port Adapter
		Cisco 8-Port Gigabit Ethernet Shared Port Adapter
		Cisco 10-Port Gigabit Ethernet Shared Port Adapter
		Cisco 1-Port 10 Gigabit Ethernet Shared Port Adapter
		Cisco 2-Port OC3c/STM-1c POS Shared Port Adapter
		Cisco 4-Port OC3c/STM-1c POS Shared Port Adapter
		Cisco 8-port OC3/STM4 POS Shared Port Adapter

Cisco 1-Port OC12c/STM-4c POS Shared Port Adapter
Cisco 2-port OC12/STM4 POS Shared Port Adapter
Cisco 4-port OC12/STM4 POS Shared Port Adapter
Cisco 8-port OC12/STM4 POS SPA Shared Port Adapter
Cisco 1-port OC48/STM16 POS/RPR Shared Port Adapter
Cisco 2-port OC48/STM16 POS/RPR Shared Port Adapter
Cisco 4-port OC48/STM16 POS/RPR Shared Port Adapter
Cisco 1-Port OC-192c/STM-64c POS/RPR Shared Port Adapter with XFP
Optics

The following provides a functional description of each sub-component.

#### 1.5.1 Embedded Services Processor (5Gbps, 10Gbps, 20Gbps)

The ESPs are responsible for the data-plane processing tasks, and all network traffic flows through them. Packets arrive to the ESPs from the network. Each packet is decoded, interpreted, processed and forwarded, as necessary, by the ESP. The ESP performs all baseline packet routing operations, including MAC classification, Layer 2 and Layer 3 forwarding, quality-of-service (QoS) classification, policing and shaping, security access control lists (ACLs), VPN, load balancing, and NetFlow. The ESPs contain a cryptographic co-processor. This co-processor is dedicated to providing cryptographic acceleration for cryptographic operations within the ASR 1000.

### 1.5.2 Route Processor (RP1, RP2)

The RPs within the ASR 1000 provides the advanced packet routing capabilities of the ASR 1000 Series Router. The RPs provide the monitoring, managing, and configuring services for the TOE itself. All TOE administration is performed within the RPs. The administrative CLI interface is provided by the Route Processors. The RPs also negotiate and maintain IPSec authentication, encryption methods, and encryption keys between the TOE and external IT entities.

As noted in table 4, there are embedded RPs in the lower models and RP1 and RP2's in the higher models. The RP1 are first-generation Cisco ASR 1000 Series Route Processors and the RP2's are second-generation Cisco ASR 1000 Series Route Processors. These RPs interact with a separate Freescale processor for offloading some cryptographic computations.

#### **1.5.3 Shared Port Adaptors**

SPAs provide the physical interfaces for TOE connectivity to the connected network including copper, channelized, POS, and Ethernet.

## **1.6 Logical Scope of the TOE**

The TOE is comprised of several security features. Each of the security features identified above consists of several security functionalities, as identified below.

1. Identification & Authentication

- 2. Security Management
- 3. VPN, Router, and/or Firewall Information Flow Control
- 4. Trusted Channel/Path
- 5. Cryptography
- 6. Security Audit
- 7. Availability

These features are described in more detail in the subsections below.

#### 1.6.1 Identification & Authentication

The ASR performs two types of authentication: device-level authentication of the remote device (VPN peers) and user authentication for the Authorized Administrator of the ASR. Device-level authentication allows the ASR to establish a secure channel with a trusted peer. The secure channel is established only after each device authenticates itself. Device-level authentication is performed via IKE/IPSec mutual authentication. The ASR provides authentication services for administrative users wishing to connect to the ASRs secure CLI administrative interface. The TOE requires authorized administrators to authenticate prior to being granted access to any of the management functionality.

#### 1.6.2 Security Management

The TOE provides secure administrative services for management of general TOE configuration and the security functionality provided by the TOE. All TOE administration occurs either through a secure SSHv2 session via terminal server or via a local console connection. The TOE provides the ability to securely manage all TOE administrative users; all audit functionality of the TOE; all TOE cryptographic functionality; and the information flow control policies enforced by the TOE. The TOE supports three separate administrative roles: Cryptographic Administrator, Audit Administrator and Security Administrator. The Cryptographic elements related to the establishment of secure connections to and from the TOE. The Audit Administrator is responsible for the regular review of the TOE's audit data. The Security Administrator is responsible for all other administrative tasks.

When an administrative session is initially established, the TOE displays a Security Administrator configurable warning banner. This is used to provide any information deemed necessary by the Security Administrator. The TOE supports several scenarios in which the administrative session is either locked out or terminated, as follows;

- The TOE allows an administrator to lock out her administrative session on demand.
- The TOE locks administrative sessions based on a configured period of inactivity.
- The TOE terminates the administrative session after a configurable time interval of session inactivity occurs.

### 1.6.3 VPN, Router, and/or Firewall Information Flow Control

The TOE enforces several information flow control policies, including:

- VPN services
- Unauthenticated TOE services
- Unauthenticated information flow

Each of these enforced information flows are further discussed below.

#### 1.6.3.1 VPN services

The VPN process includes remote device authentication, negotiation of specific cryptographic parameters for the session, and providing a secure connection from and to the remote device. For inbound or outbound connections with external IT entities that are capable of supporting VPN (e.g., a peer ASR 1000 series router, a VPN Peer), the TOE will establish a secure connection. For other inbound or outbound traffic a secure connection will not be established.

#### 1.6.3.2 Unauthenticated TOE services

The Cisco ASR 1000 Series Routers mediate all information flows to and from the ASR itself. The TOE has the ability to permit or deny information flows based on the characteristics of the information flow. By examining the information flows to the TOE itself, the ASR is able to provide specific TOE services to requesting unauthenticated entities. The TOE services that are available to unauthenticated entities are configurable by the Security Administrator and must include, ICMP. All other TOE services are only available to authenticated entities.

#### 1.6.3.3 Unauthenticated information flow

The Cisco ASR 1000 mediates all information flows through the ASR for unauthenticated information flows. The TOE provides the ability to classify all data flows into zones. Configurable allow or deny rule sets are applied to each information flow on a zone by zone basis. All security attributes are inspected based on the configurable rule set of the information flow. The TOE makes the decision to allow or deny unauthenticated information flows based on the configured information flow rule set. The ASR generates and maintains "state" information for all approved connections mediated by the TOE. The "state" information is used to monitor the status of an approved connection and validate incoming packets received as part of an approved connection.

The TOE ensures that all information flows from the TOE do not contain residual information from previous traffic. Packets are padded with a specific defined pattern. Residual data is never transmitted from the TOE. Additionally, The TOE maintains counters of the number of the connections through the TOE. When the TOE's counters

exceed the maximum sessions, the TOE will take actions to reduce the number of connections.

#### 1.6.4 Trusted Path/Channel

The TOE establishes a trusted path between the TOE and the remote management station used by the administrators to manage the TOE. This Trusted path is secured using an SSHv2 secure connection. All remote administration occurs through the SSHv2 secure trusted path. Alternatively, the TOE supports local administration through a directly connected management station.

The ASR establishes a trusted channel between itself and peer IT devices. Between the ASR and peer routers, network control information is exchanged via trusted channels to allow dynamic connection establishment and packet routing. Network control information consists of specific requests and instructions that include destination address, routing controls, and signaling information. Trusted channels are secured via IPSec encryption.

#### 1.6.5 Cryptography

The TOE provides cryptography in support of other ASR security functionality. This cryptography has been validated for conformance to the requirements of FIPS 140-2 overall Level 2 and Level 3 for sections 3 and 10. The ASR provides cryptography in support of VPN connections. The cryptographic services provided by the TOE in support of IPSec include:

Cryptographic Method	Use within IPSec
Internet Key Exchange	Used to establish initial IPSec session.
SP 800-56 Key Exchange	Used in IPSec session establishment.
Group Domain of Interpretation	Used in IPSec session establishment.
RSA Digital Signatures	Used in IPSec session establishment.
ANSI X9.31 PRNG	Used in IPSec session establishment.
SHS	Used to provide IPSec traffic integrity verification.
AES	Used to encrypt IPSec session traffic.

 Table 7: IPSec Related Cryptography

The TOE also provides cryptography in support of secure administration. The following table identifies the cryptography provided in support of the secure administration.

Cryptographic Method	Use within SSHv2
SP 800-56 Key Exchange	Used in SSHv2 session establishment.
RSA Digital Signatures	Used in SSHv2 session establishment.
ANSI X9.31 PRNG	Used in SSHv2 session establishment.
SHS	Used to provide SSHv2 traffic integrity verification.
AES	Used to encrypt SSHv2 session traffic.

 Table 8: SSHv2 Related Cryptography

NOTE: See the entries for FCS\_CKM.1(1), FCS\_CKM.1(2), FCS\_CKM\_(EXT).2, FCS\_CKM.4, FCS\_COP.1(1), FCS\_COP.1(2), FCS\_COP.1(3), FCS\_COP.1(4), and FCS\_COP\_(EXT).1 within section 6.1, "TOE Security Functional Requirement Measures" for additional details regarding the use of cryptography within SSHv2.

In support of the provided cryptography, the TOE performs a number of self-tests to ensure the correct operation. These tests include,

- Self tests to demonstrate the correct operation of the following cryptographic functions:
  - $\circ$  Key error detection;
  - cryptographic algorithms;
  - RNG/PRNG
- Self tests to demonstrate the correct operation of each key generation component
- Self tests to verify the integrity of TSF data related to the key generation
- Self tests to verify the integrity of stored TSF executable code
- Self tests to demonstrate the correct operation of the TSF

#### 1.6.6 Security Audit

The ASR provides extensive auditing capabilities. The TOE can audit events related to security alarms, cryptographic functionality, information flow control enforcement, identification and authentication, and administrative actions. The ASR generates an audit record for each auditable event. In addition to generating audit records for auditable events, the TOE monitors the occurrences and identifies potential security violation based on the generated audit records. Once the ASR has detected a potential security violation, an alarm is generated and a message is displayed to administrators. Additionally, the Security Administrator can configure the TOE to generate an audible alarm to indicate a potential security violation and enforces confirmation of each alarm by an administrator. The ASR provides the Audit Administrator with a sorting and searching capability to improve audit analysis. The Security Administrator configures auditable events, backs-up and manages audit data storage. The TOE provides the Security Administrator with a circular audit trail or a configurable audit trail threshold to track the storage capacity of the audit trail.

#### 1.6.7 High Availability

For ASR configurations that include dual ESPs or RPs, one of the ESPs or RPs act as the active hardware while the other acts as a hot standby. If there is a hardware failure within either the active ESP or active RP, the hot standby ESP or RP within the ASR automatically becomes active. If there is a software failure within the active software instance, the ASR automatically switches to the hot standby software instance resident within the TOE on the hot standby.

## **1.7 TOE Evaluated Configuration**

The following figure provides a visual depiction of an example TOE deployment. The TOE boundary is surrounded with a hashed red line.



The previous figure includes the following:

- Several examples of TOE Models
  - o ASR 1002
  - o ASR 1004
  - o ASR 1006
- VPN Peer (IT Environment)
- Peer Router (IT Environment)
- Management Workstation

NOTE: While the previous figure includes three TOE devices and three non-TOE IT environment devices, the TOE is only the ASR 1000 device. Only one TOE device is required for deployment of the TOE in an evaluated configuration.

#### **1.7.1 Excluded Functionality**

The following functional is excluded from the evaluation.

Excluded Functionality	Exclusion Rationale
Dual IOS mode – dual instances on a single ASR	This functionality provides software redundancy
1000 of the system software	within the TOE. Software redundancy is not a
	security functionality required by the Protection
	Profiles for which conformance is claimed.
In-Service Software Upgrade (ISSU)	This functionality provides the ability to upgrade
	the TOE software without taking the TOE out of
	commission. The functionality is not a security
	functionality required by the Protection Profiles for
	which conformance is claimed.
Any TLS communication with the TOE	TLS communications with the TOE were excluded
	from FIPS 140-2 validations. These types of
	connections would include HTTPS connections
	with external servers. The TOE does not require
	any communication with external servers via
	HTTPS to provide the functionality described in the
	ST.
SNMP and Web User Interface management	These management interfaces do not enforce the
	required role privileges.
Access to the Linux shell within the ASR 1000	The Linux shell access could be used to execute
Series router	other (non-TOE) applications within the router.
	Note that access to this shell has been removed from
	the TOE software image.
The physical auxiliary port, the BITS Ethernet Port, and the USB port.	They have no current use with the TOE.
External NTP server	The TOE must rely upon its own internal timestamp
	per the PP requirements.
External Authentication server	The TOE must rely upon local authentication
	mechanisms per the PP requirements.
Management via telnet and ftp	These protocols send authentication data in the
	clear.
Usage of debug.conf	The FIPS 140-2 validation restricts usage of the
	debug.conf file to set environment variable values.
Level-based privilege separation in IOS XE.	This evaluation creates custom non-hierarchical
	roles that are not level-based but command access
	based.

 Table 9: Excluded Functionality

These services may be disabled by configuration (with the exception of the Linux shell, and physical ports which are disabled in the TOE software and cannot be enabled). The exclusion of this functionality does not affect compliance to any of the identified Protection Profiles.

## 2 CONFORMANCE CLAIMS

#### 2.1 Common Criteria Conformance Claim

The TOE and ST are compliant with the Common Criteria (CC) Version 3.1, Revision 3, dated: July 2009.

The TOE and ST are EAL4 Augmented with ALC\_FLR.2 Part 3 conformant. The TOE and ST are CC Part 2 extended.

### 2.2 Protection Profile Conformance

This ST claims functional compliance to the following Common Criteria validated Protection Profiles:

Protection Profile		Date
U.S. Government Router Protection Profile For Medium Robustness		July 25, 2007
Environments		
U.S. Government Virtual Private Network (VPN) Boundary Gateway	1.2	Jan 30, 2009
Protection Profile For Medium Robustness Environments		
U.S. Government Protection Profile for Traffic Filter Firewall For Medium	1.1	July 25, 2007
Robustness Environments		

#### Table 10: Protection Profiles

#### 2.2.1 Protection Profile Refinements

The three Protection Profiles for which conformance is claimed contain several SFRs, Threats, Assumptions, OSPs, and Objectives which convey the same functionality but are worded slightly differently. For each SFR, Threat, Assumption, OSP, and Objective, the text was combined within the Security Target.

#### 2.2.2 Protection Profile Additions

The following threats were added to the TOE:

- ♦ T.NORECOVERY
- The following objectives were added to the TOE:
  - ♦ O.HA

The following requirements were added to the set of SFRs on the TOE:

- ◆ FCS\_GDOI\_(EXT).1,
- ◆ FPT\_HA\_(EXT).1

## 2.3 **Protection Profile Conformance Claim Rationale**

#### 2.3.1 TOE Appropriateness

The ASR TOE provides all of the Routing, VPN, and Traffic Filter Firewall functionality at a level of security comensurate with that identified in the U.S. Government Protection Profiles:

- U.S. Government Router Protection Profile For Medium Robustness Environments (pp\_router\_mr\_v1.1)
- U.S. Government Virtual Private Network (VPN) Boundary Gateway Protection Profile For Medium Robustness Environments (pp\_vpn\_mr\_v1.2)
- U.S. Government Protection Profile for Traffic Filter Firewall For Medium Robustness Environments (pp\_fw\_tf\_mr\_v1.1) Note that strict compliance with these protection profiles is not being claimed, but in accordance with guidance from CCEVS, demonstrable conformance is being claimed for the assurance requirements in the PPs.

#### 2.3.2 TOE Security Problem Definition Consistency

The Assumptions, Threats, and Organization Security Policies included in the Security Target represent a combination of the Assumptions, Threats, and Organization Security Policies specified in the three Protection Profiles for which conformance is claimed. All concepts covered in each of the Protection Profile's Security Problem Definitions are included in the Security Target. The following table identifies each assumption included in the ST and provides rationale for its inclusion in the Security Target with regards to the claims Protection Profiles.

Assumption	PPs	Rationale
A.NO_GENERAL_PURPOSE	pp_router_mr_v1.1	The PPs contain two variants of the
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	Assumption that provide the same
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	information. The version found in
		pp_router_mr_v1.1 and pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1
		was used because they are slightly more
		comprehensive.
A.PHYSICAL	pp_router_mr_v1.1	The PPs contain two variants of the
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	Assumption that provide the same
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	information. The version found in
		pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 and pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1 was
		used for readability.
A.NO_TOE_BYPASS	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	Replicated exactly from PPs
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
A.AVAILABILITY	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Replicated exactly from PP

 Table 11: Assumption Protection Profile Conformance

The following table identifies each OSP included in the ST and provides rationale for its inclusion in the Security Target with regards to the claims Protection Profiles.

OSP	PPs	Rationale
P.CRYPTOGRAPHIC_FUNCTIONS	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
P.CRYPTOGRAPHY_VALIDATED	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
P.VULNERABILITY_ANALYSIS_TEST	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
P.INTEGRITY	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	Reproduced exactly from the PP
P.ACCESS_BANNER	pp_router_mr_v1.1	The PPs contained two versions of the OSP
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	that were different by only one word
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	(substituting "TOE" for "system"). The
		version found in pp_router_mr_v1.1 was used
		for readability.
P.ACCOUNTABILITY	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
P.ADMIN_ACCESS	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
P.CRYPTOGRAPHY	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP
P.COMPATIBILITY	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP

#### Table 12: OSP Protection Profile Conformance

The following table identifies each Threat included in the ST and provides rationale for its inclusion in the Security Target with regards to the claims Protection Profiles.

Table 13: Threat Protection	<b>Profile Conformance</b>
-----------------------------	----------------------------

Threat	PPs	Rationale
T.ADMIN_ERROR	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
T.UNAUTHORIZED_ACCESS	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Used the variant of the Threat found in
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1 as the base text because it
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	is the most comprehensive version of the
		Threat.
		Combined the reference to User Data found
		in pp_router_mr_v1.1 for completeness. No
		threat was not addressed in the reproduction.
T.ADDRESS_MASQUERADE	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
T.AUDIT_COMPROMISE	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
T.CRYPTO_COMPROMISE	pp_router_mr_v1.1	The PPs contained two slightly different
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	variants of this threat. The variant found in
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	pp_router_mr_v1.1 was used for readability.
T.FLAWED_DESIGN	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
T.FLAWED_IMPLEMENTATION	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	

Threat	PPs	Rationale
T.MALICIOUS_TSF_ COMPROMISE	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
T.POOR_TEST	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced the variation of the Threat found
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	In pp_router_mr_v1.1 and pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 because it is the most comprehensive version
	pp_1w_t1_111_v1.1	of the Threat
T.REPLAY	pp router mr v1.1	The PPs contain two very similar versions of
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	the Threat. The version found in
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 and pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1 for
		readability.
T.RESIDUAL_DATA	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
T UNAUTHODIZED DEED	pp_IW_II_mr_VI.1	Denne dura d'arrentla, farme the DDe
1.UNAUTHORIZED_PEEK	pp_router_mr_v1.1 pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
T.UNIDENTIFIED_ACTIONS	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
I.UNKNOWN_STATE	pp_router_mr_v1.1	found in the PPs. The variant found in
	pp_vpn_nn_v1.2	pp fw tf mr v1 1 was used because the
	pp_1u,	functionality is described in the most detail in
		that version of the threat. There is no
		contradictory information in this variation of
		the threat.
T.ADMIN_ROGUE	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced the variation of the threat found
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	in pp_router_mr_v1.1. The text is the same as
	$pp_1w_u_mr_v1.1$	the acronym is spelled out
T.MASOUERADE	pp router mr v1.1	Reproduced the variation of the threat found
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	in pp_router_mr_v1.1 because the text covers
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	everything found in the other variations of the
		threat plus additional information.
T.RESOURCE_EXHAUSTION	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced the variation of the threat found
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	in pp_router_mr_v1.1 because the text
	pp_1w_u_mr_v1.1	type of attacks found in the other variations
		of the threat.
T.SPOOFING	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced the variation of the threat found
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	in pp_router_mr_v1.1 because the text
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	identifying the type of attackers is more
		specific then the text in the other variations of the Threat Nothing is avaluded from the
		variation that was reproduced
T.UNATTENDED SESSION	pp router mr v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
T.EAVESDROP	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP
T.NORECOVERY	New Threat	This threat addresses high availability found
		in the TOE. This does not contradict any of
		the functionality found in the other threats.

#### 2.3.3 Statement of Security Objectives Consistency

The Security Objectives included in the Security Target represent a combination of the Security Objectives specified in the three Protection Profiles for which conformance is claimed. All concepts covered in each of the Protection Profile's Statement of Security Objectives are included in the Security Target. The following table identifies each objective included in the ST and provides rationale for its inclusion in the Security Target with regards to the claims Protection Profiles.

Objective	PPs	Rationale
O.ROBUST_ADMIN_GUIDANCE	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
O.AUDIT_GENERATION	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
O.AUDIT_PROTECTION	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
O.AUDIT_REVIEW	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_tw_tt_mr_v1.1	
O.CHANGE_MANAGEMENT	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
O CODDECT THE ODED (TION	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
O.CORRECT_TSF_OPERATION	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
O CRYPTOCR ADUIC EUNCTIONS	pp_Iw_tI_mr_vI.1	Since the mariant of this shireting found in
U.CRTPTUGRAPHIC_FUNCTIONS	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Since the variant of this objective found in
	$pp_vpn_nr_v1.2$	pp_router_mr_v1.1 contains an the information in the other variants of the
	pp_1w_u_uu_v1.1	objectives plus additional information, the
		variant found in pp. router, mr. v1.1 was
		reproduced in the ST
O.CRYPTOGRAPHY VALIDATED	pp vpn mr v1.2	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp fw tf mr v1.1	T THE THE T
O.DISPLAY BANNER	pp router mr v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	1 2
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
O.DOCUMENT_KEY_LEAKAGE	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Omitted as the required assurance
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	requirements were not included.
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	-
O.SELF_PROTECTION	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
O.SOUND_DESIGN	pp_router_mr_v1.1	This objective was identified in all three PPs.
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	The variant in pp_router_mr_v1.1 contains
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	the same information with slightly different
		wording. The variant included in
		pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 and pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1 was
		used for readability.
OSOUND IMPLEMENTATION	pp router mr v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs

Table 14:	Objective	Protection	Profile	Conformance
	Objective	I I OUCCHOIL	1 I UIIIC	comormance

Objective	PPs	Rationale
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	_pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
O.TIME_STAMPS	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
O POBLIST TOF ACCESS	pp_Iw_u_IIII_vI.I	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
0.ROB051_10E_ACCESS	pp_router_mi_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the TTS
	$pp_vpn_nv_vn_v$	
O.TRUSTED PATH	pp router mr v1.1	The variant of the objective found in
_	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 was reproduced in the ST
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	because it included the broadest language.
O.USER_GUIDANCE	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP
O.VULNERABILITY_ANALYSIS_TEST	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
O.ADMIN_ROLE	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced the variant found in
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	pp_router_mr_v1.1 and pp_vpn_mr_v1.2
	pp_1w_u_mr_v1.1	because this variant contains all of the
		additional information
O INTEGRITY	nn vnn mr v1 2	Reproduced exactly from the PP
O.MAINT MODE	pp_vpn_nn_v1.2	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp vpn mr v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
O.MANAGE	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
O.PEER_AUTHENTICTION	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
O.RESIDUAL_INFORMATION	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_nr_v1.2	
O RESOURCE SHARING	$pp_1w_u_1u_1u_v_1.1$	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
O.RESOURCE_SHARING	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the FFs
	pp fw tf mr v1.1	
O.THOROUGH FUNCTIONAL	pp router mr v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
TESTING	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	1 2
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
O.MEDIATE_INFORMATION_FLOW	pp_router_mr_v1.1	This objective is identified as O.MEDIATE
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	in pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 and pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1.
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
O.PROTOCOLS	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP
O.PROTECT_IN_TRANSIT	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP
U.KEPLAY_DETECTION	pp_router_mr_v1.1	i nis objective is identified as O.MEDIATE
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	In pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 and pp_1w_t1_mr_v1.1.
O HA	<u>PP_IW_U_IIII_VI.I</u> New objective	This Objective was introduced in the ST. The
0.1111		objective does not contradict any of the
		functionality found in the MR PPs. This
		objective discusses High Availability
		objectives of the TOE.

#### 2.3.4 Statement of Security Requirements Consistency

The Security Functional Requirements included in the Security Target represent a combination of the Security Functional Requirements specified in the three Protection Profiles for which conformance is claimed. All concepts covered in each of the Protection Profile's Statement of Security Requirements are included in the Security Target. Additionally, the Security Assurance Requirements included in the Security Target are identical to the Security Assurance Requirements included in each of the Protection Profiles. The following table identifies each SFR included in the ST and provides rationale for its inclusion in the Security Target with regards to the claims Protection Profiles.

SFR	PPs	Rationale
FAU_ARP.1	pp_router_mr_v1.1	This SFR is an exact reproduction of the SFR variants in
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 and pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1 which include a
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	superset of the SFR in pp_router_mr_v1.1.
FAU_GEN.1	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Identified as FAU_GEN.1-NIAP-0407 in pp_vpn_mr_v1.2
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	Identified as FAU_GEN.1-NIAP-0410 in pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	Identified as FAU_GEN.1-NIAP-0429 in pp_router_mr_v1.1
		Since the SFRs present the same information in each
		iteration, the ST author chose the pp_router_mr_v1.1 to
		reproduce for readability. The ST includes all of the auditable
		events listed in each of the tables within each PP with the
		exception of events corresponding to the Authenticated
		Information Flow SFP.
FAU_GEN.2	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Identified as FAU_GEN.2-NIAP-410 in the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	Exactly reproduced the version of the SFR included in
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 and pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1 since these also
		include the events in the pp_router_mr_v1.1.
FAU_SAA.1	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Identified as FAU_SAA.1-NIAP-0407 in pp_vpn_mr_v1.2
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	and pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	Identified as FAU_SAA.1-NIAP-0410 in pp_router_mr_v1.1
		Since the SFR presents the same information in each iteration
		with slight wording differences, the ST author chose to
		reproduce the variant of the SFR found in pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1.
		The list of auditable events is a superset of the lists found in
		all of the SFRs in each PP.
FAU_SAR.1	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Exactly reproduced the variant of the SFR found in
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 and pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1. These SFR variants
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	were chosen because they identify the "administrators" as the
		role that may view the audit information. This is consistent
	11	with guidance provided by CCEVS.
FAU_SAR.2	pp_router_mr_v1.1	"administrators" as the role that may view the audit
	$pp_vpn_nr_v1.2$	information This is consistent with guidence provided by
	pp_iw_u_iii_vi.i	CCEVS
EALL SAD 2	nn routor mr ul l	Exactly reproduced the variant of the SED found in
FAU_SAK.5	pp_fouter_fill_v1.1	pp ypp mr y1 2 and pp fw tf mr y1 1 These SEP variants
	$pp_vpn_nv_1.2$	pp_vpii_iii_v1.2 and pp_iw_ti_iii_v1.1. These SFK variants
	Ph <sup>1</sup> m <sup>1</sup> m <sup>1</sup> ,111	in the SER variants found in nn ynn mr yl 2 plus "rule
		identity"
FAU SEL 1	pp router mr v1 1	Identified as FAU_SEL 1-NIAP-407 in the PPs_reproduced
		raenanica as rrie_522.1 tintr 107 in the rr s, reproduced

**Table 15: SFR Protection Profile Conformance** 

SFR	PPs	Rationale
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	exactly from the PPs. The operation included in the SFR are
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	a superset of the operations found in the SFR variants.
FAU_STG.1	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Identified as FAU_STG.1-NIAP-0429 in pp_router_mr_v1.1
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	and pp_vpn_mr_v1.2.
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	Reproduced the SFRs exactly from the pp_router_mr_v1.1
		and pp_tw_tt_mr_v1.1. These are not limited to
		"Unauthorized" modifications as identified in FAU_SIG.1.2
EALL STG 2	nn routor mr ul 1	Of pp_vpn_nnr_v1.2.
FA0_510.5	pp_louter_line_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the FFS
	$pp_vpn_nv_{1.2}$	
FCS CKM.1(1)	pp router mr v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp vpn mr v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
FCS_CKM.1(2)	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
FCS_CKM.2	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
ECS CVM 4	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	Dense Les Les estl. Generales DDe
FCS_CKM.4	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_nn_v1.2	
FCS_COP_1(1)	$pp_1w_u_m_v1.1$	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_roddor_nir_v1.1 pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	Reproduced exactly from the 115
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
FCS_COP.1(2)	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
FCS_COP.1(3)	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from pp_vpn_mr_v1.2.
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	The latest surgice of the VDN DD ellows for CUA 1 as a
	$pp_1w_u_mr_v1.1$	The fatest version of the vPN PP allows for SHA-1 as a selection. The reason is backward compatibility with IPSEC
		The TOE implements IPSEC so this is a valid rationale for
		the use of SHA-1
FCS COP.1(4)	pp router mr v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
_ 、,	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
FDP_IFC.1(1)	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	Reproduced exactly from the PP
FDP_IFC.1(2)	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
FDP_IFC.1(3)	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Not included in the S1. All requirements on Authenticated
EDP IEC $1(4)$	nn router mr v11	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp fw tf mr v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the FF 5
FDP IFF.1(1)	$pp_vpn mr v1.2$	Reproduced exactly from the PP
FDP_IFF.1(2)	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
FDP_IFF.1(3)	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Not included in the ST. All requirements on Authenticated
		Information Flow SFP were excluded.
FDP_IFF.1(4)	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Used the variant found in pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1 for the first
	pp_tw_tt_mr_v1.1	element since it covers everything in pp_router_mr_v1.1 plus
		auditional.
		Since the second element of both variants of the SFK contain

SFR	PPs	Rationale
		the same information worded slightly differently, the
		pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1 variant was used for readability.
		Since the operation found in the sixth element of the SFR is
		more broadly stated in pp_tw_tt_mr_v1.1, this was used in
		the S1.
FDP RIP 2	nn router mr v11	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
FIA AFI 1	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Identified as FIA AFI 1-NIAP-0425 in pp. router. mr. v1 1
	pp_router_nn_v1.1	Reproduced the first assignment from pp_router_mr_v1 1 and
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1 because it is more restrictive. Used the second operation from pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 and
		pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1becasue it more specifically identifies the users of the TOF. All else reproduced exactly from the PPs
		Note that for VPN peers utilizing IKEv1 as required in the
		PPs it is not possible to support automated authentication
		failures The IKEv1 protocol provides a pre-shared key
		method of an ISAKMP SA establishment, and when this
		method is used any IKE peer which possesses a pre-shared
		secret key is considered legitimate due to the anonymous
		nature of the IKEv1 DH key exchange procedure. Thus,
		policy based VPN peer lockout can only be achieved by
		manual methods (e.g. a pre-shared key removal or
	nn nouton mn v1 1	Modification).
FIA_AID.I(I)	pp_fouter_fill_v1.1	identifies "administrator" rather then "authorized user". This
	$pp_vpn_nv_1.2$	decision was made because the requirement more specific
FIA ATD.1(2)	pp_router mr v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP
FIA UAU.1	pp vpn mr v1.2	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	1 7
FIA_UAU.2	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
FIA_UID.2	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
ELA LICD 1	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	Denne dene d de exeminer of des CED found in
FIA_USB.1	pp_router_mr_v1.1	reproduced the version of the SFR found in
	pp_vpn_nn_v1.2	was modified as per CCIMB Interp #137
FMT MOF.1(1)	pp_rw_tt_m_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp vpn mr v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
FMT_MOF.1(2)	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced the variant found in pp_vpn_mr_v1.2. This was
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	done because this version of the SFR includes the names of
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	the referenced SFRs.
		Removed the ability to disable selftests because it violates the
		rules of FIPS 140-2
FMT MOF.1(3)	pp router mr v1.1	Exactly reproduced the variant of the SFR found in
/ / /	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 and pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1. These SFR variants
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	were chosen because they identify the "administrators" as the
		role that may view the audit information. This is consistent
		with guidance provided by CCEVS.
FMT_MOF.1(4)	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
EMT MOE 1(5)	$\frac{pp_1w_u_1ur_v_1.1}{pp_router_pr_v^{1.1}}$	Reproduced exactly from the DDs
1 M11_M101.1(3)	$PP_10uuc1_111_v1.1$	Reproduced exactly from the FS

SFR	PPs	Rationale
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
FMT_MOF.1(6)	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
EMT. MOE 1(7)	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	Denne dense die verster frams the DDs
FM1_MOF.1(7)	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_nn_v1.2	
FMT MOF.1(8)	pp router mr v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP
FMT MSA.1(1)	pp fw tf mr v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP
FMT_MSA.1(2)	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	Refined the policy to only identify that the cryptographic
		administrator could update the policy attributes. This is
		consistent with the other Protection Profiles for which
		conformance is claimed and is consistent with guidance
		previously provided by CCEVS
FMT_MSA.1(3)	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP
$FM1_MSA.1(4)$	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Not included in the S1. All requirements on Authenticated
EMT MSA 2	nn router mr y11	Pomoved from the ST because this dependency is satisfied by
TWIT_WISA.2	pp_loutel_lill_v1.1	placing strict requirements on the values of attributes of the
		cryptographic module in the associated FCS requirements.
		Therefore, FMT MSA.2 is not necessary to satisfy the
		requirement of only secure values being assigned to secure
		attributes. This is consistent with pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 and
		pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1. Since this requirement applies
		cryptographic parameters and pp_vpn_mr_v1 is the newest
		and most cryptographically intensive of the PPs for which
		conformance is claimed, the removal of FM1_MSA.2 is
FMT MSA 3(1)	nn ynn mr y12	appropriate.
$\frac{\text{FMT}_{\text{MSA},3}(1)}{\text{FMT}_{\text{MSA},3}(2)}$	$pp_vpn_m_v1.2$	Reproduced exactly from the PP
FMT_MSA.3(3)	pp_vpn_nn_v1.2	Identified as FMT_MSA.3-NIAP-0409 in the
1.001_000000	pp fw tf mr v1.1	pp fw tf mr v1.1
		Combined the first operation of the SFRs to include the
		superset of the two operations. Used the refinement found in
		pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1 for readability. This does not change the
		meaning of the SFR.
FMT_MTD.1(1)	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	Added "and the deletion of audit data" for consistency with
	$pp_1w_1_mr_v1.1$	the SEP
		Removed "or authorized IT entities" since there are no IT
		entities that may change any of the security value. All
		administration is done by the administrator.
FMT_MTD.1(2)	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
FMT_MTD.1(3)	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	Removed "or authorized IT entity" since time cannot be set
	pp_tw_tt_mr_v1.1	from an external server. All administration is done by the
<b>EMT MTD</b> 1(4)	nn routor me ul 1	autilities and operation of the SED to include the
$1^{1}$ 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 (4)	$pp_1outer_mr_v1.1$	comoniculus second operation of the SFK to include the superset of the operations of the variants of the SFD. No
	$\frac{PP_vPn_m_v1.2}{pp fw ff mr v1 1}$	functionality was removed
	PP_1,	This is consistent with guidance previously provided by

SFR	PPs	Rationale
		CCEVS.
FMT_MTD.2(1)	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP
FMT_MTD.2(2)	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
FMT_MTD.2(3)	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP
FMT_REV.1	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	This includes the superset of the completion of the operations
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	in the first and second element of the SFR. This is consistent
		with the other Protection Profiles for which conformance is
		claimed.
FMT_SMF.1	pp_router_mr_v1.1	The operation in this SFR is the superset of the operation in
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	each of the PPs. The first bullet was refined to remove the
	pp_iw_u_mr_vi.i	ability to invoke the 1SF sel-test to the security administrator,
		refined to remove the ability to disable the crypto self tests as
		the TOF does not support disabling them. The third bullet
		was refined to apply to administrators instead of just audit
		administrators so that it matches FMT SMR.2 where all
		administrators may view audit records. Bullets 10, 12, and 14
		were refined to remove the authorized IT entities role as NTP
		is not to be used with the TOE. The 23 <sup>rd</sup> bullet came from the
		VPN PP but duplicates functionality from the Router PP in
		bullet 6.
FMT_SMR.2	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced the variant of the SFR found in pp_vpn_mr_v1.2.
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	This variation of the SFR includes the entire scope of the SFR
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	covered by the other variations
FPT_FLS.1	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP
FP1_IIA.I	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP
FP1_IIC.I	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP
FF1_III.I	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP
11 1_KC V.1	$pp_vpn_nv_1.2$	Reproduced exactly from the FFS
FPT RCV 2	pp_rw_tr_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP
FPT RPL 1	pp_router_mr_v11	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_router_nin_v1.2	Reproduced exactly from the FF o
	pp fw tf mr v1.1	
FPT_STM.1	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
FPT_TDC.1	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP
FPT_TST.1(1)	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
FP1_1S1.1(2)	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_1w_u_mr_v1.1	Since the SERs relate the same functionality the variant from
$FKU_KSA.1(1)$	pp_foulef_fill_v1.1	on fw tf mr v1 1 was used for readability. The functionality
	$\frac{PP_vPn_m_v1.2}{pp fw ff mr v1 1}$	has not been affected
FRU RSA.1(2)	pp router mr v1 1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp vpn mr v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	
FTA_SSL.1	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	Since the two variations of the SFRs within the present the
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	same information with slightly different verbiage, the

SFR	PPs	Rationale
		variation found in pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1 was used for readability.
FTA_SSL.2	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	Since the two variations of the SFRs within the present the same information with slightly different verbiage, the variation found in pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1 was used for readability.
FTA_SSL.3	pp_router_mr_v1.1 pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	Blended the requirement to include the more broad general session being terminated. This covers all of the types of sessions listed in the variation of the SFRs.
FTA_TAB.1	pp_router_mr_v1.1 pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	Combined the first refinement in the SFR to include the both "user" and "administrator". Otherwise, the SFR is repeated exactly from the PPs.
FTA_TSE.1	pp_router_mr_v1.1 pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	Since each variant of the SFR presents the same information in a slightly different manner, the variant found in pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 was replicated for readability.
FTP_ITC.1(1)	pp_router_mr_v1.1 pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
FTP_ITC.1(2)	pp_router_mr_v1.1 pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
FTP_TRP.1(1)	pp_router_mr_v1.1 pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	Of the variations of this SFR, the one found in pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1 covers the same information found in the other PPs plus additional information. The variant found in pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1 was reproduced for clarity.
FTP_TRP.1(2)	pp_router_mr_v1.1 pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	The pp_router_mr_v1.1 variant of this SFR has the most comprehensive for the first element of the SFR. This version was used in the ST. The pp_router_mr_v1.1 and pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1 variant of the second element are the broadest of the SFR variants. This version was used in the ST. The pp_router_mr_v1.1 and pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1 variant of the third element are the broadest of the SFR variants. This version was used in the ST.
FAU_ARP_ACK_(EXT).1	pp_router_mr_v1.1 pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	The version of the SFR found in pp_router_mr_v1.1 was used because it contains all for the requirements of the other variations plus additional text. This extended requirement was included in the ST because of its inclusion in Protection Profiles for which conformance is claimed.
FAU_STG_(EXT).4	pp_router_mr_v1.1 pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	Identified as FAU_STG.NIAP-0414-1-NIAP-0429 in the PPs. Since the variations of the SFR present similar information, the variation from pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 and pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1 was chosen. This extended requirement was included in the ST because of its inclusion in Protection Profiles for which conformance is
FCS_CKM_(EXT).2	pp_router_mr_v1.1 pp_vpn_mr_v1.2 pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	Claimed. Reproduced exactly from the PPs This extended requirement was included in the ST because of its inclusion in Protection Profiles for which conformance is claimed.

SFR	PPs	Rationale
FCS_COP_(EXT).1	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	This extended requirement was included in the ST because of its inclusion in Protection Profiles for which conformer as is
		claimed
FCS IKE (EXT).1	pp router mr v1.1	Reproduced the variant from pp vpn mr v1.2. This was
/	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	done to reflect the updated version of the requirement found
		in version 1.2 of the SFR.
		This extended requirement was included in the ST because of
		its inclusion in Protection Profiles for which conformance is
		claimed.
FCS_GDOI_(EXT).1	New Requirement	Not applicable. New requirement.
	PP	This requirement extends the IPSec VPN functionality to
	11.	include Group Domain of Interpretation. This functionality
		does not contradict any other functionality found in the PPs.
FIA_UAU_(EXT).2	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	Removed because the functionality is covered by FIA_UAU.2.
FIA_UAU_(EXT).5	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	I his extended requirement was included in the S1 because of its inclusion in Protection Profiles for which conformance is
		claimed.
FCS_BCM_(EXT).1	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Removed the portion of the requirement the required section
	pp_vpn_mr_v1.2	2 of the of the FIPS 140 standard (Cryptographic Module
	pp_fw_tf_mr_v1.1	Ports and Interfaces) to be tested to level 3. This was removed with permission from CCEVS
		with permission from CCEVS.
		This extended requirement was included in the ST because of
		its inclusion in Protection Profiles for which conformance is
	N. D. I.	claimed.
FPT_HA_(EXT).1	New Requirement	Not applicable. New requirement.
	PP.	found in any of the other SFRs. This requirement only
		address the hardware high availability available in
		configurations of the TOE with multiple ESPs and RPs.
FPT_PRO_(EXT).1	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PP
		This extended requirement was included in the ST because of
		its inclusion in Protection Profiles for which conformance is
		claimed.
FPT_TST_(EXT).1	pp_router_mr_v1.1	Reproduced exactly from the PPs
	$pp_vpn_nr_v1.2$	This extended requirement was included in the ST because of
	FF_1,,,_,,_,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	its inclusion in Protection Profiles for which conformance is
		claimed.

# **3 SECURITY PROBLEM DEFINITION**

This chapter identifies the following:

- Significant assumptions about the TOE's operational environment.
- IT related threats to the organization countered by the TOE.
- Environmental threats requiring controls to provide sufficient protection.
- Organizational security policies for the TOE as appropriate.

This document identifies assumptions as A.assumption with "assumption" specifying a unique name. Threats are identified as T.threat with "threat" specifying a unique name. Policies are identified as P.policy with "policy" specifying a unique name.

### 3.1 Assumptions

The specific conditions listed in the following subsections are assumed to exist in the TOE's IT environment. These assumptions include both practical realities in the development of the TOE security requirements and the essential environmental conditions on the use of the TOE.

Assumption Name	Assumption Definition
A.NO_GENERAL_PURPOSE	The Administrator ensures there are no general purpose computing or
	storage repository capabilities (e.g., compilers, editors, web servers, database
	servers or user applications) available on the TOE.
A.PHYSICAL	Physical security, commensurate with the value of the TOE and the data it
	contains, is assumed to be provided by the environment.
A.NO_TOE_BYPASS	Information cannot flow between external and internal networks located in
	different enclaves without passing through the TOE.
A.AVAILABILITY	Network resources shall be available to allow clients to satisfy mission
	requirements and to transmit information.

#### Table 16 TOE Assumptions

NOTE: The Assumptions included in this ST are drawn from the three Medium Robustness Protection Profiles for which conformance is claimed. Similar Assumptions or Assumptions with the same purpose have been combined where appropriate.

#### 3.2 Threats

The following table lists the threats addressed by the TOE and the IT Environment. The assumed level of expertise of the attacker for all the threats identified below is unsophisticated.

Threat Name	Threat Definition
T.ADMIN_ERROR	An administrator may incorrectly install or configure the TOE, or install
	a corrupted TOE resulting in ineffective security mechanisms.
T.UNAUTHORIZED_ACCESS	A user may gain access to user data/services (either on the TOE or by sending data through the TOE) for which they are not authorized according to the TOE security policy.
T.ADDRESS_MASQUERADE	A user on one interface may masquerade as a user on another interface

**Table 17 Threats** 

Threat Name	Threat Definition
	to circumvent the TOE policy.
T.AUDIT_COMPROMISE	A malicious user or process may view audit records, cause audit records
	to be lost or modified, or prevent future audit records from being
	recorded, thus masking a user's action.
T.CRYPTO_COMPROMISE	A malicious user or process may cause key, data or executable code
	associated with the cryptographic functionality to be inappropriately
	accessed (viewed, modified, or deleted), thus compromising the
	cryptographic mechanisms and the data protected by those mechanisms.
T.FLAWED_DESIGN	Unintentional or intentional errors in requirements specification or
	design of the TOE may occur, leading to flaws that may be exploited by
	a manchous user or program.
I.FLAWED_IMPLEMENTATION	Unintentional or intentional errors in implementation of the IOE design
	may occur, leading to flaws that may be exploited by a mancious user
T MALICIOUS TSE	A maligious user or process may cause TSE data or executable code to
COMPROMISE	A mancrous user of process may cause TSF data of executable code to be inappropriately accessed (viewed, modified, or deleted)
T POOR TEST	Lack of or insufficient tests to demonstrate that all TOE security
1.FOOK_TEST	functions operate correctly (including in a fielded TOE) may result in
	incorrect TOE behavior being undiscovered thereby causing potential
	security vulnerabilities.
T.REPLAY	A user may gain inappropriate access to the TOE by replaying
	authentication information, or may cause the TOE to be inappropriately
	configured by replaying TSF data or security attributes (captured as it
	was transmitted during the course of legitimate use).
T.RESIDUAL_DATA	A user or process may gain unauthorized access to data through
_	reallocation of TOE resources from one user or process to another.
T.UNAUTHORIZED_PEER	An unauthorized IT entity may attempt to establish a security
	association with the TOE.
T.UNIDENTIFIED_ACTIONS	The administrator may fail to notice potential security violations, thus
	limiting the administrator's ability to identify and take action against a
	possible security breach.
T.UNKNOWN_STATE	When the TOE is initially started or restarted after a failure, design
	flaws, or improper configurations may cause the security state of the
	TOE to be unknown.
T.ADMIN_ROGUE	An administrator's intentions may become malicious resulting in user or
	TOE Security Functions (TSF) data being compromised.
T.MASQUERADE	A malicious user, process, or external IT entity may masquerade as an
T DESCUDEE EVILAUETION	authorized entity in order to gain access to data or TOE resources.
T.RESOURCE_EXHAUSTION	A mancious process or user may block others from system resources
	(e.g., connection state tables, TCP connections) via a resource
T SPOOFING	A malicious user process or external IT entity may micropresent itself
1.51 001 110	as the TOF to obtain identification and authentication data
T UNATTENDED SESSION	A user may gain unauthorized access to an unattended session
T EAVESDROP	A malicious user or process may observe or modify user or TSE data
	transmitted between physically separated parts of the TOF.
T.NORECOVERY	A single fault within the TSF may result in the TOF becoming non-
	operational and prevent TSF functionality.
	r

NOTE: The Threats included in this ST are drawn from the three Medium Robustness Protection Profiles for which conformance is claimed. Similar Threats/Threats with the same purpose have been combined where appropriate.

## 3.3 Organizational Security Policies

An organizational security policy is a set of rules, practices, and procedures imposed by an organization to address its security needs. The following table, Organizational Security Policies, identifies the organizational security policies

Policy Name	Policy Definition
P.CRYPTOGRAPHIC_FUNCTIONS	The TOE shall provide cryptographic functions for its own use,
	including encryption/decryption and digital signature operations.
P.CRYPTOGRAPHY_VALIDATED	Where the TOE requires FIPS-approved security functions, only
	NIST FIPS validated cryptography (methods and
	implementations) are acceptable for key management (i.e.,
	generation, access, distribution, destruction, handling, and
	storage of keys) and cryptographic services (i.e., encryption,
	decryption, signature, hashing, key distribution, and random
	number generation services).
P.VULNERABILITY_ANALYSIS_TEST	The TOE must undergo appropriate independent vulnerability
	analysis and penetration testing to demonstrate that the TOE is
	resistant to an attacker possessing a medium attack potential.
P.INTEGRITY	The TOE shall support the IETF Internet Protocol Security
	Encapsulating Security Payload (IPSEC ESP) as specified in
	RFC 2406. Sensitive information transmitted to a peer TOE shall
	apply integrity mechanisms as specified in Use of HMAC-SHA-
	1-96 within ESP and AH (RFC 2404).
P.ACCESS_BANNER	The TOE shall display an initial banner describing restrictions of
	use, legal agreements, or any other appropriate information to
	which users consent by accessing the TOE.
P.ACCOUNTABILITY	The authorized users of the TOE shall be held accountable for
	their actions within the TOE.
P.ADMIN_ACCESS	Administrators shall be able to administer the TOE both locally
	and remotely through protected communications channels.
P.CRYPTOGRAPHY	The TOE shall use NIST FIPS validated cryptography as a
	baseline with additional NSA-approved methods for key
	management (i.e., generation, access, distribution, destruction,
	handling, and storage of keys), and for cryptographic operations
	(i.e., encryption, decryption, signature, hashing, key exchange,
	and random number generation services).
P.COMPATIBILITY	The TOE must meet Request for Comments (RFC) requirements
	for implemented protocols to facilitate inter-operation with other
	routers and network equipment using the same protocols.

**Table 18 Organizational Security Policies** 

NOTE: The OSPs included in this ST are drawn from the three Medium Robustness Protection Profiles for which conformance is claimed. Similar OSPs or OSPs with the same purpose have been combined where appropriate.

# 4 SECURITY OBJECTIVES

This Chapter identifies the security objectives of the TOE and the IT Environment. The security objectives identify the responsibilities of the TOE and the TOE's IT environment in meeting the security needs.

• This document identifies objectives of the TOE as O.objective with objective specifying a unique name. Objectives that apply to the IT environment are designated as OE.objective with objective specifying a unique name.

## 4.1 Security Objectives for the TOE

The following table, Security Objectives for the TOE, identifies the security objectives of the TOE. These security objectives reflect the stated intent to counter identified threats and/or comply with any security policies identified. An explanation of the relationship between the objectives and the threats/policies is provided in the rationale section of this document.

TOE Security Obj.	TOE Security Objective Definition
O.ROBUST_ADMIN_GUIDANCE	The TOE will provide administrators with the necessary
	information for secure delivery and management.
O.AUDIT_GENERATION	The TOE will provide the capability to detect and create records
	of security-relevant events associated with users.
O.AUDIT_PROTECTION	The TOE will provide the capability to protect audit information.
O.AUDIT_REVIEW	The TOE will provide the capability to selectively view audit
	information, and alert the administrator of identified potential
	security violations.
O.CHANGE_MANAGEMENT	The configuration of, and all changes to, the TOE and its
	development evidence will be analyzed, tracked, and controlled
	throughout the TOE's development.
O.CORRECT_TSF_OPERATION	The TOE will provide the capability to test the TSF to ensure the
	correct operation of the TSF in its operational environment.
O.CRYPTOGRAPHIC_FUNCTIONS	The TOE shall provide cryptographic functions (i.e.,
	encryption/decryption and digital signature operations) to
	maintain the confidentiality and allow for detection of
	modification of TSF data that is transmitted between physically
	separated portions of the TOE, or stored outside the TOE.
O.CRYPTOGRAPHY_VALIDATED	The TOE shall use NIST FIPS 140-2 validated cryptomodules
	for cryptographic services implementing FIPS-approved security
	functions and random number generation services used by
	cryptographic functions.
O.DISPLAY_BANNER	The TOE will display an advisory warning regarding use of the
	TOE.
O.SELF_PROTECTION	The TSF will maintain a domain for its own execution that
	protects itself and its resources from external interference,
	tampering, or unauthorized disclosure.
O.SOUND_DESIGN	The design of the TOE will be the result of sound design
	principles and techniques; the design of the TOE, as well as the
	design principles and techniques, are adequately and accurately
	documented.

Tuble 17 Deculity Objectives for the 101	Table 19	Security	Objectives	for	the	TOE
--	----------	----------	------------	-----	-----	-----

TOE Security Obj.	TOE Security Objective Definition
O.SOUND_IMPLEMENTATION	The implementation of the TOE will be an accurate instantiation
	of its design, and is adequately and accurately documented.
O.TIME_STAMPS	The TOE shall provide reliable time stamps and the capability
	for the administrator to set the time used for these time stamps.
O.ROBUST TOE ACCESS	The TOE will provide mechanisms that control a user's logical
	access to the TOE and to explicitly deny access to specific users
	when appropriate.
O.TRUSTED PATH	The TOE will provide a means to ensure users are not
	communicating with some other entity pretending to be the TOE.
	and that the TOE is communicating with an authorized IT entity
	and not some other entity pretending to be an authorized IT
	entity.
O.USER GUIDANCE	The TOE will provide users with the information necessary to
_	correctly use the security mechanisms.
O.VULNERABILITY ANALYSIS TEST	The TOE will undergo appropriate independent vulnerability
	analysis and penetration testing to demonstrate the design and
	implementation of the TOE does not allow attackers with
	medium attack potential to violate the TOE's security policies.
O.ADMIN ROLE	The TOE will provide administrator roles to isolate
	administrative actions, and to make the administrative functions
	available locally and remotely.
O.INTEGRITY	The TOE must be able to protect the integrity of data transmitted
	to a peer TOE via encryption and provide IPSec authentication
	for such data. Upon receipt of data from a peer TOE, the TOE
	must be able to decrypt the data and verify that the received data
	accurately represents the data that was originally transmitted.
O.MAINT MODE	The TOE shall provide a mode from which recovery or initial
	startup procedures can be performed.
O.MANAGE	The TOE will provide all the functions and facilities necessary to
	support the administrators in their management of the security of
	the TOE, and restrict these functions and facilities from
	unauthorized use.
O.PEER AUTHENTICTION	The TOE will authenticate each peer TOE that attempts to
	establish a security association with the TOE.
O.RESIDUAL INFORMATION	The TOE will ensure that any information contained in a
	protected resource is not released when the resource is
	reallocated.
O.RESOURCE SHARING	The TOE shall provide mechanisms that mitigate attempts to
	exhaust connection-oriented resources provided by the TOE
	(e.g., entries in a connection state table: Transmission Control
	Protocol (TCP) connections to the TOE).
O.THOROUGH FUNCTIONAL TESTING	The TOE will undergo appropriate security functional testing
	that demonstrates the TSF satisfies the security functional
	requirements.
O.MEDIATE INFORMATION FLOW	The TOE must mediate the flow of information between sets of
	TOE network interfaces or between a network interface and the
	TOE itself in accordance with its security policy.
O.PROTOCOLS	The TOE will ensure that standardized protocols are
	implemented in the TOE to RFC and/or Industry specifications
	to ensure interoperability.
O.PROTECT_IN_TRANSIT	The TSF shall protect TSF data when it is in transit between the
	TSF and another trusted IT entity.
O.REPLAY_DETECTION	The TOE will provide a means to detect and reject the replay of
_	authentication data and other TSF data and security attributes.
TOE Security Obj.	TOE Security Objective Definition
-------------------	---
O.HA	The TOE shall provide mechanisms that allow continued
	operation of the TSF when a single hardware or software failure
	occurs within the TSF.

NOTE: The TOE Objectives included in this ST are drawn from the three Medium Robustness Protection Profiles for which conformance is claimed. Similar TOE Objectives or TOE Objectives with the same purpose have been combined where appropriate.

# 4.2 Security Objectives for the Environment

The assumptions identified previously are incorporated as security objectives for the environment. They levy additional requirements on the environment, which are largely satisfied through procedural or administrative measures. The following table, Security Objectives for the Environment, identifies the security objectives for the environment.

Environment Security Objective Name	IT Environment Security Objective Definition
OE.CRYPTANALYTIC	Cryptographic methods used in the IT environment shall be interoperable with the TOE, should be FIPS 140-2 validated and should be resistant to cryptanalytic attacks (i.e., will be of adequate strength to protect unclassified Mission Support, Administrative, or Mission Critical data).
OE.NO_GENERAL_PURPOSE	The Administrator ensures there are no general-purpose computing or storage repository capabilities (e.g., compilers, editors, or user applications) available on the TOE.
OE.NO_TOE_BYPASS	Information cannot flow between external and internal networks located in different enclaves without passing through the TOE.
OE.PHYSICAL	Physical security, commensurate with the value of the TOE and the data it contains, is assumed to be provided by the IT environment.
OE.AVAILABILITY	Network resources will be available to allow clients to satisfy mission requirements and to transmit information.

Table 2	20 Security	Objectives	for the	Environment
I ubic 4	lo becunity	Objectives	ior the	Linvironnene

NOTE: The IT Environment Objectives included in this ST are drawn from the three Medium Robustness Protection Profiles for which conformance is claimed. Similar IT Environment Objectives or IT Environment Objectives with the same purpose have been combined where appropriate.

# **5 SECURITY REQUIREMENTS**

This section identifies the Security Functional Requirements for the TOE and for the IT Environment. The Security Functional Requirements included in this section are derived verbatim from Part 2 of the *Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation, Version 3.1, Revision 3, dated: July 2009* and all National Information Assurance Partnership (NIAP) and international interpretations.

# 5.1 Conventions

The CC defines operations on Security Functional Requirements: assignments, selections, assignments within selections and refinements. This document uses the following font conventions to identify the operations defined by the CC:

- Assignment: Indicated with *italicized* text;
- Refinement made by PP author: Indicated with **bold** text and strikethroughs, if necessary;
- Refinement made by ST author: Indicated with *bold italicized* text and strikethroughs, if necessary;
- Selection: Indicated with <u>underlined</u> text;
- Assignment within a Selection: Indicated with *italicized and underlined* text;
- Iteration: Indicated by appending the iteration number in parenthesis, e.g., (1), (2), (3).

Explicitly stated SFRs are identified by having a label '(EXT)' after the requirement name for TOE SFRs.

# 5.2 TOE Security Functional Requirements

This section identifies the Security Functional Requirements for the TOE. The TOE Security Functional Requirements that appear in the following table are described in more detail in the following subsections.

Functional Component			
SFR Component ID	Component Name		
Security Functional Requiren	Security Functional Requirements Directly Drawn from CC Part 2		
FAU_ARP.1	Security alarms		
FAU_GEN.1	Audit data generation		
FAU_GEN.2	User identity association		
FAU_SAA.1	Potential violation analysis		
FAU_SAR.1	Audit review		
FAU_SAR.2	Restricted audit review		
FAU_SAR.3	Selectable audit review		
FAU_SEL.1	Selective Audit		
FAU_STG.1	Protected audit trail storage		
FAU_STG.3	Action in case of possible audit data loss		
FCS_CKM.1(1)	Cryptographic Key Generation		
FCS_CKM.1(2)	Cryptographic Key Generation		
FCS_CKM.2	Cryptographic Key Distribution		
FCS_CKM.4	Cryptographic Key Destruction		
FCS_COP.1(1)	Cryptographic Operation		

Table 21 Secu	rity Functional	Requirements
---------------	-----------------	--------------

Functional Component	
FCS_COP.1(2)	Cryptographic Operation
FCS_COP.1(3)	Cryptographic Operation
FCS_COP.1(4)	Cryptographic Operation
FDP_IFC.1(1)	Subset information flow control
FDP_IFC.1(2)	Subset information flow control
FDP_IFC.1(4)	Subset information flow control
FDP_IFF.1(1)	Simple security attributes
FDP_IFF.1(2)	Simple security attributes
FDP_IFF.1(4)	Simple security attributes
FDP_RIP.2	Full residual information protection
FIA_AFL.1	Authentication failure handling
FIA_ATD.1(1)	User attribute definition
FIA_ATD.1(2)	User attribute definition
FIA_UAU.1	Timing of authentication
FIA_UAU.2	User authentication before any action
FIA_UID.2	User identification before any action
FIA_USB.1	User-Subject Binding
FMT_MOF.1(1)	Management of security functions behavior
FMT_MOF.1(2)	Management of security functions behavior
FMT_MOF.1(3)	Management of security functions behavior
FMT_MOF.1(4)	Management of security functions behavior
FMT_MOF.1(5)	Management of security functions behavior
FMT_MOF.1(6)	Management of security functions behavior
FMT_MOF.1(7)	Management of security functions behavior
FMT_MOF.1(8)	Management of security functions behavior
FMT_MSA.1(1)	Management of security attributes
FMT_MSA.1(2)	Management of security attributes
FMT_MSA.1(3)	Management of security attributes
FMT_MSA.3(1)	Static attribute initialization
FMT_MSA.3(2)	Static attribute initialization
FMT_MSA.3(3)	Static attribute initialization
FMT_MTD.1(1)	Management of TSF data
FMT_MTD.1(2)	Management of TSF data
FMT_MTD.1(3)	Management of TSF data
FMT_MTD.1(4)	Management of TSF data
FMT_MTD.2(1)	Management of limits on TSF data
FMT_MTD.2(2)	Management of limits on TSF data
FMT_MTD.2(3)	Management of limits on TSF data
FMT_REV.1	Revocation
FMT_SMF.1	Specification of Management Functions
FMT_SMR.2	Restrictions on security roles
FPT_FLS.1	Failure with preservation of secure state
FPT_ITA.1	Inter-TSF availability within a defined availability metric
FPT_ITC.1	Inter-TSF confidentiality during transmission
FPT_ITI.1	Inter-TSF detection of modification
FPT_RCV.1	Manual recovery
FPT_RCV.2	Automated Recovery
FPT_RPL.1	Replay detection
FPT_STM.1	Reliable time stamps
FPT_TDC.1	Inter-TSF basic TSF data consistency

Functional Component		
FPT_TST.1(1)	TSF Testing	
FPT_TST.1(2)	TSF Testing	
FRU_RSA.1(1)	Maximum quotas	
FRU_RSA.1(2)	Maximum quotas	
FTA_SSL.1	TSF-initiated session locking	
FTA_SSL.2	User-initiated locking	
FTA_SSL.3	TSF-initiated termination	
FTA_TAB.1	Default TOE access banners	
FTA_TSE.1	TOE session establishment	
FTP_ITC.1(1)	Inter-TSF trusted channel	
FTP_ITC.1(2)	Inter-TSF trusted channel	
FTP_TRP.1(1)	Trusted path	
FTP_TRP.1(2)	Trusted path	
Explicitly Stated Security Functional Requirements		
FAU_ARP_ACK_(EXT).1	Security alarm acknowledgement	
FAU_STG_(EXT).4	Site-Configurable Prevention of Audit Loss	
FCS_CKM_(EXT).2	Explicit: Cryptographic Key Handling and Storage	
FCS_COP_(EXT).1	Explicit: Random Number Generation	
FCS_IKE_(EXT).1	Internet Key Exchange	
FCS_GDOI_(EXT).1	Group Domain of Interpretation	
FIA_UAU_(EXT).5	Multiple authentication mechanisms	
FCS_BCM_(EXT).1	Explicit: Baseline Cryptographic Module	
FPT_HA_(EXT).1	High Availability	
FPT_PRO_(EXT).1	Standard Protocol Usage	
FPT_TST_(EXT).1	Extended: TSF Testing	

# 5.2.1 Security audit (FAU)

#### FAU\_ARP.1 Security alarms

FAU\_ARP.1.1 – **Refinement:** The TSF shall [*immediately display an alarm message, identifying the potential security violation and make accessible the audit record contents associated with the auditable event(s) that generated the alarm, at the:* 

- *a) local console,*
- *b)* remote administrator sessions that exist, and;
- c) remote administrator sessions that are initiated before the alarm has been acknowledged, and;
- *d) at the option of the Security Administrator, generate an audible alarm, and;*
- e) [<u>no other methods</u>]]

upon detection of a potential security violation.

#### FAU\_GEN.1 Audit data generation

FAU\_GEN.1.1 The TSF shall be able to generate an audit record of the following auditable events:

a) Start-up and shutdown of the audit functions;

- b) All auditable events for the *basic* level of audit;
- c) [specifically defined auditable events listed in Table 21;] and
- d) [no additional events].

FAU\_GEN.1.2 **Refinement:** The TSF shall record within each audit record at least the following information:

- a) Date and time of the event, type of event, subject identity, and the outcome (success or failure) of the event; and
- b) For each audit event type, based on the auditable event definitions of the functional components included in the PP/ST, [*information specified in column three* of the table below].

Requirement	Auditable Events	Audit Record Contents
FAU_ARP.1	Actions taken due to potential security	Identification of what caused the
	violations.	generation of the alarm.
	Potential security violation was detected	
FAU_ARP_ACK_(	Actions taken due to potential security	The identity and location of the
EXT).1	violations.	administrator that acknowledged the
		alarm.
FAU_GEN.1	None	
FAU_GEN.2	None	
FAU_SAA.1	Enabling and disabling of any of the analysis	The identity of the Security
	mechanisms;	Administrator performing the function.
	Automated responses performed by the tool.	
FAU_SAR.1	Reading of information from the audit records.	The identity of the Audit Administrator
		performing the function.
EALL CAD 2	Opening the audit trail	
FAU_SAR.2	Unsuccessful attempts to read information	The identity of the administrator
	from the audit records.	performing the function.
FAU_SAR.3	Unsuccessful attempts to read information	The parameters used for the viewing.
	from the audit records.	
FAU_SEL.1	All modifications to the audit configuration	The identity of the Security
	that occur while the audit collection functions	Administrator performing the function.
	are operating.	
FAU_STG_(EXT).	Actions taken due to the audit storage failure.	The identity of the Security
4		Administrator performing the function.
FAU_STG.1	None	
FAU_STG.3	Actions taken due to exceeding the audit	The identity of the Security
	threshold.	Administrator performing the function.
FCS_BCM_(EXT).	None	
FCS_CKM.1(1)	a) Failure of the activity;	Identify the failed activity and the data
	b) Generation and loading of key.	that caused the failure.
	Failure of the symmetric key generation	Type of cryptographic operation
		Any applicable cryptographic mode(s)
		of operation, excluding any sensitive
		information
FCS_CKM.1(2)	a) Failure of the activity;	Identify the failed activity and the data
	b) Generation and loading of key pair for	that caused the failure.
	digital signatures.	

#### Table 22 Auditable Events Table

Requirement	Auditable Events	Audit Record Contents
	Failure of the asymmetric key generation	Type of cryptographic operation Any applicable cryptographic mode(s) of operation, excluding any sensitive information
FCS_CKM.2	<ul><li>a) Failure of the activity;</li><li>b) Generation and loading of key.</li></ul>	Identify the failed activity and the data that caused the failure.
	Failure of the Key distribution	Type of cryptographic operation Any applicable cryptographic mode(s) of operation, excluding any sensitive information
FCS_CKM.4	<ul><li>a) Failure of the activity;</li><li>b) Generation and loading of key.</li></ul>	Identify the failed activity and the data that caused the failure.
	Failure of the Key destruction	Type of cryptographic operation Any applicable cryptographic mode(s) of operation, excluding any sensitive information
FCS_CKM_(EXT). 2	<ul><li>a) Failure of the activity;</li><li>b) Generation and loading of key.</li></ul>	Identify the failed activity and the data that caused the failure.
	Failure of the Cryptographic Key Handling and Storage	Type of cryptographic operation Any applicable cryptographic mode(s) of operation, excluding any sensitive information
FCS_COP.1(1)	Failure of cryptographic operation.	Type of cryptographic operation. Any applicable cryptographic mode(s) of operation, excluding any sensitive information.
FCS_COP.1(2)	Failure of cryptographic operation.	Type of cryptographic operation Any applicable cryptographic mode(s) of operation, excluding any sensitive information.
FCS_COP.1(3)	Failure of cryptographic operation.	Type of cryptographic operation. Any applicable cryptographic mode(s) of operation, excluding any sensitive information.
FCS_COP.1(4)	Failure of cryptographic operation.	Type of cryptographic operation. Any applicable cryptographic mode(s) of operation, excluding any sensitive information.
FCS_COP_(EXT).1	Failure of cryptographic operation.	Type of cryptographic operation. Any applicable cryptographic mode(s) of operation, excluding any sensitive information.
FCS_IKE_(EXT).1	<ul> <li>a) Generation and loading of key pair for digital signatures;</li> <li>b) Changes to the pre-shared key used for authentication;</li> <li>c) All modifications to the key lifetimes;</li> <li>d) Failure of the authentication in Phase 1;</li> <li>e) Failure to negotiate a security association in Phase 2.</li> </ul>	If failure occurs, record a descriptive reason for the failure.
FCS_GDOI_(EXT).	Failure of cryptographic operation.	If failure occurs, record a descriptive reason for the failure.
$FDP_IFC.1(1)$	None	

Requirement	Auditable Events	Audit Record Contents
FDP_IFC.1(2)	None	
FDP_IFC.1(4)	None	
FDP_IFF.1(1)	<ul> <li>a) Decisions to permit or deny information flows (<i>This encompasses "all decisions on</i> <i>requests for information flow"</i>);</li> <li>b) Operation applied to each information flow permitted.</li> </ul>	Presumed identity of source subject. Identity of destination subject. Transport layer protocol, if applicable. Source subject service identifier, if applicable. Destination subject service identifier, if applicable. Identity of the interface on which the TOE received the packet. For denied information flows, the reason for denial.
FDP_IFF.1(2)	Decisions to permit or deny information flows ( <i>This encompasses "all decisions on requests</i> <i>for information flow"</i> ).	Presumed identity of source subject. Identity of destination subject. Transport layer protocol, if applicable. Source subject service identifier, if applicable. Destination subject service identifier, if applicable. Identity of the interface on which the TOE received the packet. For denied information flows, the reason for denial.
FDP_1FF.1(4)	Decisions to permit or deny information flows ( <i>This encompasses "all decisions on requests</i> <i>for information flow"</i> ).	Presumed identity of source subject. Identity of destination subject. Transport layer protocol, if applicable. Source subject service identifier, if applicable. Destination subject service identifier, if applicable. Identity of the interface on which the TOE received the packet. For denied information flows, the reason for denial.
FDP_RIP.2	None	
FIA_AFL.1	a) The reaching of the threshold for the unsuccessful authentication attempts and the actions (e.g., disabling of an account) taken and the subsequent, if appropriate, restoration to the normal state (e.g., re- enabling of a terminal).	Identity of the unsuccessful authentication attempts, Terminal identification, Action taken.
FIA_ATD.1(1)	None	
FIA_ATD.1(2)	None	
FIA_UAU.1	None	
FIA_UAU.2	<ul><li>a) Successful and unsuccessful use of authentication mechanisms;</li><li>b) All use of the authentication mechanism.</li></ul>	Claimed identity of the user using the authentication mechanism. Success or failure of the authentication mechanism.
FIA_UAU_(EXT).5	<ul><li>a) The final decision on authentication;</li><li>b) The result of each activated mechanism together with the final decision.</li><li>All use of the local authentication mechanism</li></ul>	Claimed identity of the user attempting to authenticate.

Requirement	Auditable Events	Audit Record Contents
FIA_UID.2	a) Unsuccessful use of the user identification	Claimed identity of the user using the
	mechanism, including the user identity	identification mechanism.
	provided;	
	b) All use of the user identification	
	mechanism, including the user identity	
	provided (that is, those that authenticate to	
	the TOE).	
	All use of the user identification mechanism	Claimed identity of the user using the
	used for authorized users (that is, those that	identification mechanism
	authenticate to the TOE)	
FIA_USB.1	a) Unsuccessful binding of user security	The identity of the user whose attributes
	attributes to a subject (e.g., creation of a	are attempting to be bound.
	subject).	
	b) Success and failure of binding of user	
	security attributes to a subject.	
FMT_MOF.1(1)	All modifications in the behavior of the	The identity of the administrator
_ 、,	functions in the TSF.	performing the function, the function
		being performed and the data being used
		to perform the function (if available).
FMT_MOF.1(2)	a) Enabling of the key-generation self-tests.	The identity of the administrator
_ 、 /	b) All modifications in the behavior of the	performing the function, the function
	functions in the TSF.	being performed and the data being used
		to perform the function (if available).
FMT MOF.1(3)	All modifications in the behavior of the	The identity of the administrator
_ ()	functions in the TSF.	performing the function, the function
		being performed and the data being used
		to perform the function (if available).
FMT MOF.1(4)	All modifications in the behavior of the	The identity of the administrator
()	functions in the TSF.	performing the function, the function
		being performed and the data being used
		to perform the function (if available).
FMT MOF.1(5)	All modifications in the behavior of the	The identity of the administrator
_ ()	functions in the TSF.	performing the function, the function
		being performed and the data being used
		to perform the function (if available).
FMT MOF.1(6)	All modifications in the behavior of the	The identity of the administrator
_ 、 /	functions in the TSF.	performing the function, the function
		being performed and the data being used
		to perform the function (if available).
FMT MOF.1(7)	All modifications in the behavior of the	The identity of the administrator
_ 、 /	functions in the TSF.	performing the function, the function
		being performed and the data being used
		to perform the function (if available).
FMT_MOF.1(8)	All modifications in the behavior of the	The identity of the administrator
_ (*)	functions in the TSF.	performing the function, the function
		being performed and the data being used
		to perform the function (if available).
FMT MSA.1(1)	All manipulation of the security attributes.	The identity of the administrator
	(This encompasses "All modifications of the	performing the function, the function
	values of security attributes.")	being performed and the security
	······································	attributes being used to perform the
		function (if available).
L	1	

Requirement	Auditable Events	Audit Record Contents
FMT_MSA.1(2)	All manipulation of the security attributes.	The identity of the administrator
	(This encompasses "All modifications of the	performing the function, the function
	values of security attributes.")	being performed and the security
		attributes being used to perform the
		function (if available).
FMT_MSA.1(3)	All manipulation of the security attributes.	The identity of the administrator
	(This encompasses "All modifications of the	performing the function, the function
	values of security attributes.")	being performed and the security
		attributes being used to perform the
		function (if available).
FMT_MSA.3(1)	a) Modifications of the default setting of	The identity of the administrator
	permissive or restrictive rules;	performing the function, the function
	b) All modifications of the initial values of	being performed and the security
	security attributes.	attributes being used to perform the
		function (if available).
FMT_MSA.3(2)	a) Modifications of the default setting of	The identity of the administrator
	permissive or restrictive rules;	performing the function, the function
	b) All modifications of the initial values of	being performed and the security
	security attributes.	attributes being used to perform the
		function (if available).
FMT_MSA.3(3)	a) Modifications of the default setting of	The identity of the administrator
	permissive or restrictive rules;	performing the function, the function
	b) All modifications of the initial values of	being performed and the security
	security attributes.	attributes being used to perform the
		function (if available).
FMT_MTD.1(1)	All modifications of the values of TSF data by	The identity of the administrator
	the administrator. (This encompasses "All	performing the function, the function
	modifications to the values of ISF data.")	being performed and the values of 1SF
		data being modified during the
EMT MTD 1(2)	All modifications of the volves of	The identity of the administrator
$FWI1_WI1D.1(2)$	All modifications of the values of	nerforming the function the function
	cryptographic administrator ( <b>This</b>	being performed and the values of TSE
	ancompasses "All modifications to the values	data being modified during the
	of TSF data ")	performance the function (if available)
FMT MTD 1(3)	All modifications to the time and date used to	The identity of the administrator
())	form the time stamps by the administrator	performing the function, the function
	(This encompasses "All modifications to the	being performed the values of data being
	values of TSF data.")	modified and the modifying data used
	-, -, -, -,	during the performance the function.
FMT_MTD.1(4)	All modifications to the information flow	The identity of the administrator
_ 、 /	policy ruleset by the Security Administrator.	performing the function, the function
	(This encompasses "All modifications to the	being performed the values of data being
	values of TSF data.")	modified and the modifying data used
		during the performance the function.
FMT_MTD.2(1)	a) All modifications of the limits on TSF data	The identity of the administrator
	b) All modifications in the actions to be taken	performing the function, the function
	in case of violation of the limits.	being performed the values of data being
		modified and the modifying data used
		during the performance the function.

Requirement	Auditable Events	Audit Record Contents
	All modifications of the limits	The identity of the administrator
	Actions taken when the quota is exceed	performing the function
	(include the fact that the quota was exceeded)	
FMT_MTD.2(2)	a) All modifications of the limits on TSF data.	The identity of the administrator
	b) All modifications in the actions to be taken	performing the function, the function
	in case of violation of the limits.	being performed the values of data being
		modified and the modifying data used
		during the performance the function.
	All modifications of the limits	The identity of the administrator
	Actions taken when the quota is exceed	performing the function
	(include the fact that the quota was exceeded)	
EMT MTD $2(2)$	a) All modifications of the limits on TSE data	The identity of the administrator
$\Gamma M \Gamma M \Gamma D.2(3)$	a) All modifications in the actions to be taken	performing the function, the function
	in case of violation of the limits	being performed the values of data being
	in case of violation of the mints.	modified and the modifying data used
		during the performance the function
EMT DEV 1	a) Unsuggessful represention of security	List of accurity attributes that were
	a) Unsuccessful revocation of security	attempted to be revolved. The identity of
	b) All attempts to revoke security attributes	the administrator performing the
	b) An attempts to revoke security attributes.	function
FMT_SME 1	Use of the management functions	The identity of the administrator
	Ose of the management functions.	performing the function
		Identify the management function being
		performed
FMT_SMR 2	a) Modifications to the group of users that are	User IDs which are associated with the
1111_0111.2	nart of a role.	modifications
	b) Unsuccessful attempts to use a role due to	The identity of the administrator
	given conditions on the roles.	performing the function.
FPT FLS 1	Failure of the TSF	Indication that the TSE has failed with
111_1_0.0		the type of failure that occurred.
FPT HA (EXT) 1	Failure of the TSF	Indication that the TSF has failed with
()		the type of failure that occurred.
FPT ITA.1	The absence of TSF data when required by a	Include the type of TSF data that was
-	TOE.	not available and the condition that was
		to ensure availability.
FPT_ITC.1	None	
FPT_ITI.1	a) The detection of modification of transmitted	Identify the data that detected as
	TSF data.	modified and the action taken upon
	b) The action taken upon detection of	detection of the modification.
	modification of transmitted TSF data.	
FPT_PRO_(EXT).1	None	
FPT_RCV.1	a) The fact that a failure or service	Type of failure or service discontinuity
	discontinuity occurred;	
	b) Resumption of the regular operation;	
	c) Type of failure or service discontinuity.	
EDT DCV2	a) The fact that a failure an armite	Identify the failure and that the TOP
ГР1_KUV.2	a) The fact that a failure of service	identify the failure, and that the TSF was
	b) Desumption of the regular expertion:	able to recover to a secure state. If it is
	a) Type of failure or corrige discontinuity	not possible to recover, enter
	c) Type of familie of service discontinuity.	mannenance moue.
FPT_RPL.1	Detected replay attacks.	Identity of the user that was the subject

Requirement	Auditable Events	Audit Record Contents
(including replay of		of the reply attack
authentication data	Notification that a replay event occurred	Identity of the user that was the subject
notification from		of the reply attack
the authentication		
server)		
FPT_STM.1	Changes to the time.	Identify that the time has been changed
		and the administrator that took the
		action. The identity of the administrator if the
		change was performed by an
		administrator
FPT TST (EXT).1	Execution of this set of TSF self tests and the	The identity of the administrator
()	results of the tests.	performing the test, if initiated by an
		administrator. Report any results from
		the test.
FPT_TST.1(1)	Execution of this set of TSF self tests for	The identity of the administrator
	Cryptography and the results of the tests.	performing the test, if initiated by an
		administrator. Report any results from
		the test.
$FPT_TST.1(2)$	Execution of this set of TSF self tests for key	The identity of the administrator
	generation and the results of the tests.	administrator. Poport ony results from
		the test
FRU RSA 1(1)	a) Rejection of allocation operation due to	Identify the controlled resources
	resource limits.	(transport-layer quotas) that caused the
	b) All attempted uses of the resource	rejection, and the source subject
	allocation functions for resources that are	identifier.
	under control of the TSF.	
FRU_RSA.1(2)	a) Rejection of allocation operation due to	Identify the controlled resources
	resource limits.	(controlled connection-oriented
	b) All attempted uses of the resource	resources) that caused the rejection, and
	allocation functions for resources that are under control of the TSE	the user.
FTA SSI 1	Locking of an interactive session by the	The identity of the user associated with
11A_55L.1	session locking mechanism	the session being locked or unlocked
	Successful unlocking of an interactive session.	the session being rocked of universed
	Any attempts at unlocking of an interactive	
	session	
FTA_SSL.2	a) Locking of an interactive session by the	The identity of the user associated with
	session locking mechanism.	the session being locked or unlocked
	b) Successful unlocking of an interactive	
	session.	
	c) Any attempts at unlocking an interactive	
ETA SSI 2	SCSSIUII. The termination of a remote session by the	The identity of the user associated with
TTA_SSL.3	session locking mechanism	the session that was terminated
FTA TAB 1	None	the session that was terminated.
FTA TSE 1	a) Denial of a session establishment due to the	The identity of the user attempting to
	session establishment mechanism.	establish the session.
	b) All attempts at establishment of a user	For unsuccessful attempts, the reason for
	session.	denial of the establishment attempt.
		-

Requirement	Auditable Events	Audit Record Contents
FTP_ITC.1(1)	a) Failure of the trusted channel functions.	Indicated that the trusted channel failed
	b) Identification of the initiator and target of	and identification of the initiator and
	failed trusted channel functions.	target of all trusted channels.
	c) All attempted uses of the trusted channel	
	functions.	
	d) Identifier of the initiator and target of all	
	trusted channel functions.	
FTP_ITC.1(2)	a) Failure of the trusted channel functions.	Indicated that the trusted channel failed
	b) Identification of the initiator and target of	and identification of the initiator and
	failed trusted channel functions.	target of all trusted channels.
	c) All attempted uses of the trusted channel	
	functions.	
	d) Identifier of the initiator and target of all	
	trusted channel functions.	
FTP_TRP.1(1)	a) Failures of the trusted path functions.	Indicated that the trusted path failed and
	b) Identification of the user associated with all	Identification of the claimed user
	trusted path failures, if available.	identity.
	c) All attempted uses of the trusted path	
	functions.	
	d) Identification of the user associated with all	
	trusted path invocations, if available.	
FTP_TRP.1(2)	a) Failures of the trusted path functions.	Indicated that the trusted channel failed
	b) Identification of the user associated with all	and Identification of the claimed user
	trusted path failures, if available.	identity.
	c) All attempted uses of the trusted path	
	functions.	
	d) Identification of the user associated with all	
	trusted path invocations, if available.	

#### FAU\_GEN.2 User identity association

FAU\_GEN.2.1 – **Refinement**: The TSF shall be able to associate each auditable event with the identity of the user that caused the event.

#### FAU\_SAA.1 Potential violation analysis

FAU\_SAA.1.1 – The TSF shall be able to apply a set of rules in monitoring events and based upon these rules indicate a potential violation of the TSP.

FAU\_SAA.1.2 - **Refinement:** The TSF shall enforce the following rules for monitoring audited events:

- *a)* [Security Administrator specified number of authentication failures;
- b) Security Administrator specified number of Information Flow policy violations by an individual presumed source network identifier (e.g., IP address) within an administrator specified time period;
- c) Security Administrator specified number of Information Flow policy violations to an individual destination network identifier within an administrator specified time period;

- d) Security Administrator specified number of Information Flow policy violations to an individual destination subject service identifier (e.g., TCP port) within an administrator specified time period;
- e) Security Administrator specified Information Flow policy rule, or group of rule violations within an administrator specified time period;
- f) Any detected replay of TSF data or security attributes;
- g) Any failure of the cryptomodule/cryptographic self-tests (FPT\_TST.1(1));
- *h)* Any failure of the other key generation self-tests (FPT\_TST.1(2));
- *i)* Any failure of the other TSF self-tests (FPT\_TST\_(EXT).1);
- *j)* Security Administrator specified number of encryption failures;
- *k)* Security Administrator specified number of decryption failures;
- 1) Security Administrator specified number of Phase 1 authentication failures when negotiating the Internet Key Exchange protocol;
- *m)* Security Administrator specified number of failures occur during Phase 2 negotiation; and
- n) [<u>no additional rules</u>]

known to indicate a potential security violation;

#### FAU\_SAR.1 Audit review

FAU\_SAR.1.1 – The TSF shall provide [*the Administrators*] with the capability to read [*all audit data*] from the audit records.

FAU\_SAR.1.2 – **Refinement**: The TSF shall provide the audit records in a manner suitable for the **Administrators** to interpret the information.

#### FAU\_SAR.2 Restricted audit review

FAU\_SAR.2.1 – **Refinement**: The TSF shall prohibit all users read access to the audit records **in the audit trail**, except **the Administrators**.

#### FAU\_SAR.3 Selectable audit review

FAU\_SAR.3.1 - The TSF shall provide the ability to perform *searches and sorting* of audit data based on:

- *a)* [*user identity*;
- *b)* source subject identity;
- *c) destination subject identity;*
- d) ranges of one or more: dates, times, user identities, subject service identifiers, or transport layer protocol;
- *e) Rule identity;*
- *f) TOE network interfaces; and*
- g) [no additional criteria].

#### FAU\_SEL.1 Selective Audit

FAU\_SEL.1.1 - **Refinement**: The TSF shall **allow only the Security Administrator** to include or exclude auditable events from the set of audited events based on the following attributes:

- a) <u>user identity;</u>
- b) event type;
- c) [none];
- *d*) [*network identifier*;
- e) subject service identifier;
- f) success of auditable security events;
- g) failure of auditable security events;
- *h*) *rule identity; and*
- i) [no additional criteria].

#### FAU\_STG.1 Protected audit trail storage

FAU\_STG.1.1 – **Refinement**: The TSF shall **restrict the deletion of** stored audit records in the audit trail **to the Audit Administrator**.

FAU\_STG.1.2 – **Refinement:** The TSF shall be able to *prevent* modifications to the audit records in the audit trail.

#### FAU\_STG.3 Action in case of possible audit data loss

FAU\_STG.3.1 - **Refinement**: The TSF shall immediately alert the administrators by displaying a message at the local console, and at the remote administrative console when an administrative session exists for each of the defined administrative roles, at the option of the Security Administrator generate an audible alarm, [no other methods] if the audit trail exceeds [a Security Administrator settable percentage of storage capacity].

# 5.2.2 Cryptographic Support (FCS)

FCS\_CKM.1(1) Cryptographic Key Generation (for symmetric keys)

FCS\_CKM.1.1(1) **Refinement:** The TSF shall generate symmetric cryptographic keys using a **FIPS-Approved Random Number Generator as specified in FCS\_COP\_(EXT).1**, and provide integrity protection to generated symmetric keys in accordance with NIST SP 800-57 "Recommendation for Key Management" Section 6.1.

FCS\_CKM.1(2) Cryptographic Key Generation (for asymmetric keys)

FCS\_CKM.1.1(2) **Refinement:** The TSF shall generate **asymmetric** cryptographic keys in accordance with the mathematical specifications of the FIPS-approved or NIST-recommended standard [*ANSI X9.31*], using a domain parameter generator and [

1. a FIPS-Approved Random Number Generator as specified in FCS\_COP\_(EXT)]

in a cryptographic key generation scheme that meets the following:

- The TSF shall provide integrity protection and assurance of domain parameter and public key validity to generated asymmetric keys in accordance with NIST SP 800-57 "Recommendation for Key Management" Section 6.1.
- Generated key strength shall be equivalent to, or greater than, a symmetric key strength of 128 bits using conservative estimates.

#### FCS\_CKM.2 Cryptographic Key Distribution

FCS\_CKM.2.1 The TSF shall distribute cryptographic keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key distribution method [

- 1. Manual (Physical) Method, and/or
- 2. Automated (Electronic) Method ]

that meets the following:

- NIST Special Publication 800-57, "Recommendation for Key Management" Section 8.1.5
- NIST Special Publication 800-56A, "Recommendation for Pair-Wise Key Establishment Schemes Using Discrete Logarithm Cryptography"

#### FCS\_CKM.4 Cryptographic Key Destruction

FCS\_CKM.4.1 **Refinement:** The TSF shall destroy cryptographic keys in accordance with a **cryptographic key zeroization method** that meets the following:

- a) Key zeroization requirements of FIPS PUB 140-2, "Security Requirements for Cryptographic Modules"
- b) Zeroization of all plaintext cryptographic keys and all other critical cryptographic security parameters shall be immediate and complete.
- c) The TSF shall zeroize each intermediate storage area for plaintext key/critical cryptographic security parameter (i.e., any storage, such as memory buffers, that is included in the path of such data) upon the transfer of the key/critical cryptographic security parameter to another location.
- d) For non-volatile memories other than EEPROM and Flash, the zeroization shall be executed by overwriting three or more times using a different alternating data pattern each time.
- e) For volatile memory and non-volatile EEPROM and Flash memories, the zeroization shall be executed by a single direct overwrite consisting of a pseudo random pattern, followed by a read-verify.

#### FCS\_COP.1(1) Cryptographic Operation (for data encryption/decryption)

FCS\_COP.1.1(1) **Refinement:** The cryptomodule shall perform **encryption and decryption using the FIPS-approved security function AES algorithm operating in** [*CBC mode*] **and cryptographic key size of** [128 bits, 192 bits, 256 bits].

#### FCS\_COP.1(2) Cryptographic Operation (for cryptographic signature)

FCS\_COP.1.1(2) **Refinement:** The TSF shall perform **cryptographic signature services using the FIPS-approved security function** [RSA Digital Signature Algorithm (rDSA) with <u>a key size (modulus) of [between 3072 bits and 4096 bits]]</u>

that meets NIST Special Publication 800-57, "Recommendation for Key Management."

#### FCS\_COP.1(3) Cryptographic Operation (for cryptographic hashing)

FCS\_COP.1.1(3) **Refinement:** The TSF shall perform **cryptographic hashing services using the FIPS-approved security function Secure Hash Algorithm and** any message digest specified in FIPS 180-2 [SHA-1].

#### FCS\_COP.1(4) Cryptographic Operation (for cryptographic key agreement)

FCS\_COP.1.1(4) **Refinement:** The TSF shall perform **cryptographic key agreement** services using the FIPS-approved security function as specified in NIST Special Publication 800-56A, "Recommendation for Pair-Wise Key Establishment Schemes Using Discrete Logarithm Cryptography" [[*Finite Field-based key agreement algorithm*] and cryptographic key sizes (modulus) of [3072 bits and 4096 bits]] that meets NIST Special Publication 800-57, "Recommendation for Key Management".

# 5.2.3 User data protection (FDP)

#### FDP\_IFC.1(1) Subset information flow control (VPN policy)

FDP\_IFC.1.1(1) - The TSF shall enforce the [VPN SFP] on

- *a)* [source subject: TOE interface on which information is received;
- *b) destination subject: TOE interface to which information is destined.*
- c) information: network packets; and
- d) operations:
  - *i. pass packets without modifying;*
  - *ii. send IPSec encrypted and authenticated packets to a peer TOE using ESP in tunnel mode as defined in RFC 2406;*
  - *iii. decrypt, verify authentication and pass received packets from a peer TOE in tunnel mode using ESP;*
  - iv. [none]].

#### FDP\_IFC.1(2) Subset information flow control (unauthenticated TOE services policy)

FDP\_IFC.1.1(2) - The TSF shall enforce the [UNAUTHENTICATED TOE SERVICES SFP] on

- *a)* [source subject: TOE interface on which information is received;
- *b) destination subject: the TOE;*

- c) information: network packets; and
- d) operations: accept or reject network packet].

#### **FDP\_IFC.1**(4)<sup>1</sup> Subset information flow control (unauthenticated policy)

FDP\_IFC.1.1(4) - The TSF shall enforce the [UNAUTHENTICATED INFORMATION FLOW SFP] on [

- source subject: TOE interface on which information is received;
- *destination subject: TOE interface to which information is destined;*
- *information: network packets; and*
- operations:
  - 1) pass information by opening a relay connection through the TSF on behalf of the source subject to the destination subject, and with the TSF ensuring the following conditions:
    - *a)* the connection from the source subject is from a valid peer network,
    - b) the new relay connection is established to the destination subject on a valid peer network.]
  - 2) pass information.

#### FDP\_IFF.1(1) Simple security attributes (VPN policy)

FDP\_IFF.1.1(1) - The TSF shall enforce the [*VPN SFP*] based on the following types of subject and information security attributes:

- *a)* [Source subject security attributes:
  - set of source subject identifiers (**IP address**); and
  - [<u>none</u>].
- *b)* Destination subject security attributes:
  - Set of destination subject identifiers (IP address); and
  - [<u>none</u>].
- c) Information security attributes:
  - presumed identity of source subject<sub>2</sub>;
  - *identity of destination subject;*

FDP\_IFF.1.2(1) - **Refinement**: The TSF shall permit an information flow between a **source subject and a destination subject** via a controlled operation if the following rules hold:

• [the presumed identity of the source subject is in the set of source subject identifiers;

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> The third iteration of FDP\_IFC.1 was removed from the ST. Iteration numbering was preserved for document compatibility.

- the identity of the destination subject is in the set of source destination identifiers;
- the information security attributes match the attributes in an information flow policy rule (contained in the information flow policy ruleset defined by the Security Administrator) according to the following algorithm [The TOE examines a packet's source IP address, destination IP address, transport protocol, and layer 4 source and destination ports and compares them to the configured VPN policy to determine the action to apply to the network packets. If the packet is a plaintext packet that matches a policy rule that allows packets to be passed without modification, the packet is passed without modification. If the packet is a plaintext packet that matches a policy rule that requires the TOE to send IPSec encrypted and authenticated packets to a peer, the TOE encrypts and applies an authentication mechanism to the packet using ESP in tunnel mode as defined in RFC 2406 and sends it to its peer. If the packet matches a policy that requires the TOE to decrypt, verify authentication and pass received packets from a peer TOE in tunnel mode using ESP, the TOE decrypts, verifies authentication and passes received packets from a peer TOE in tunnel mode using ESP]; and
- the selected information flow policy rule specifies that the information flow is to be permitted, and what specific operation from FDP\_IFC.1(1) is to be applied to that information flow].

FDP\_IFF.1.3(1) - The TSF shall enforce the [*none*]

FDP\_IFF.1.4(1) - The TSF shall provide the following [the Security Administrator shall have the capability to view all information flows allowed by the information flow policy ruleset before the ruleset is applied].

FDP\_IFF.1.5(1) - The TSF shall explicitly authorize an information flow based on the following rules: [*none*].

FDP\_IFF.1.6(1) - The TSF shall explicitly deny an information flow based on the following rules:

- a) [The TOE shall reject requests for access or services where the presumed source identity of the information received by the TOE is not included in the set of source identifiers for the source subject;
- b) The TOE shall reject requests for access or services where the presumed source identity of the information received by the TOE specifies a broadcast identity;
- c) The TOE shall reject requests for access or services where the presumed source identity of the information received by the TOE specifies a loopback identifier;
- d) The TOE shall reject requests in which the information received by the TOE contains the route (set of host network identifiers) by which information shall flow from the source subject to the destination subject.)].

FDP\_IFF.1(2) Simple security attributes (unauthenticated TOE services policy)

FDP\_IFF.1.1(2) - The TSF shall enforce the [UNAUTHENTICATED TOE SERVICES SFP] based on the following types of subject and information security attributes:

- *a)* [Source subject security attributes:
  - set of source subject identifiers (**IP address**); and
  - [<u>none</u>].
- b) Destination subject security attributes:
  - *TOE's network identifier* (*IP address*); and
  - [<u>none</u>].
- c) Information security attributes:
  - presumed identity of source subject;
  - *identity of destination subject;*
  - *transport layer protocol;*
  - source subject service identifier;
  - *destination subject service identifier (e.g., TCP or UDP destination port number); and*
  - [for an IP-based network stack:
  - ICMP message type and code as specified in RFC 792, [[
    - o presumed source IP address
    - o destination IP address
    - <u>none</u>]];

or for a non-IP-based network stack: [

 $\circ$  none]].

FDP\_IFF.1.2(2) – **Refinement**: The TSF shall permit an information flow between a **source** subject and **the TOE** via a controlled operation if the following rules hold:

- [the presumed identity of the source subject is in the set of source subject identifiers;
- *the identity of the destination subject is the TOE;*
- *the information security attributes match the attributes in an information flow control policy according to the following algorithm* [
  - Network traffic is received by the TOE on one of its interfaces. These interfaces are grouped into zones. Traffic destined for the TOE itself is destined for the "self" zone,
  - The TOE examines the packet security attributes (including, presumed identity of source subject (IP address), identity of destination subject (IP address), transport layer protocol, source subject service identifier, destination subject service identifier (e.g., TCP or UDP destination port number) and compares the packet to the configured information flow policy rules,
  - The TOE identifies the configured information flow rule for which the network traffic applies. The information flow rules identify the actions allowed between the configured ingress zone of interfaces and the TOE "self" zone,
- *The TOE accepts the network traffic if it meets a configured allow policy and does not meet a configured reject policy*].

FDP\_IFF.1.3(2) - The TSF shall enforce the [*following rules*:

- The TOE shall allow source subjects to access TOE services [for an IP-based network stack: ICMP, [[none]; or for non-IP-based network stacks: [none] without authenticating those source subjects; and
- <u>The TOE shall allow the list of services specified immediately above to be</u> <u>enabled (become available to unauthenticated users) or disabled (become</u> <u>unavailable to unauthenticated users)]</u>.

FDP\_IFF.1.4(2) - The TSF shall provide the following [the Security Administrator shall have the capability to view all information flows allowed by this information flow control policy before the policy is applied].

FDP\_IFF.1.5(2) - The TSF shall explicitly authorize an information flow based on the following rules: [*none*].

FDP\_IFF.1.6(2) - The TSF shall explicitly deny an information flow based on the following rules:

- [*The TOE shall reject requests for access or services where the presumed source identity of the information received by the TOE is not included in the set of source identifiers for the source subject;*
- The TOE shall reject requests for access or services where the presumed source identity of the information received by the TOE specifies a broadcast identity;
- The TOE shall reject requests for access or services where the presumed source identity of the information received by the TOE specifies a loopback identifier; and
- The TOE shall reject requests in which the information received by the TOE contains the route (set of host network identifiers) by which information shall flow from the source subject to the TOE].

#### **FDP\_IFF.1**(4)<sup>2</sup> Simple Security attributes (unauthenticated policy)

FDP\_IFF.1.1(4) - The TSF shall enforce the [UNAUTHENTICATED INFORMATION FLOW SFP] based on the following types of subject and information security attributes:

- *a)* [Source subject security attributes:
  - *set of source entity identifiers* (*IP address*); and
  - [[<u>configured zone]</u>].
- *b)* Destination subject security attributes:
  - Set of destination entity identifiers (IP address); and
  - [[<u>configured zone</u>]].
- c) Information security attributes:

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> The third iteration of FDP\_IFF.1 was removed from the ST. Iteration numbering was preserved for document compatibility.

- *presumed identity of source entity1;*
- *identity of destination entity;*
- *transport layer protocol;*
- *source entity service identifier;*
- *destination entity service identifier (e.g., TCP or User Datagram Protocol (UDP) destination port number);*
- [<u>none</u>].
- Stateful packet attributes: [for IP-based network stacks:
  - Connection-oriented protocols:
    - sequence number;
    - acknowledgement number;
    - Flags:
      - *SYN*;
      - *ACK*;
      - *RST;*
      - FIN; and
    - [<u>none</u>].
  - Connectionless protocols:
    - *source and destination network identifiers (IP address);*
    - *source and destination service identifiers;*
    - [<u>none</u>];
- for non-IP-based network stacks: [none].

FDP\_IFF.1.2(4) - **Refinement**: The TSF shall permit an information flow between a **source subject** and a **destination subject** via a controlled operation if the following rules hold:

- [the presumed identity of the source entity is in the set of source entity identifiers;
- *the identity of the destination entity is in the set of destination entity identifiers;*
- the information security attributes match the attributes in an information flow policy rule (contained in the information flow policy ruleset defined by the Security Administrator) according to the following algorithm [
  - Network traffic is received by the TOE on one of its interfaces. These interfaces are grouped into zones,
  - The TOE examines the packet security attributes (including, presumed identity of source entity, identity of destination entity, transport layer protocol, source subject service identifier, destination subject service identifier (e.g., TCP or UDP destination port number) and compares the packet to the configured information flow policy rules,
  - The TOE performs a stateful inspection of the traffic by examining the packets sequence number, acknowledgement number, and flags for connection-oriented protocols or by examining the source and destination address and the traffic protocol,

- The TOE identifies the configured information flow rule the network traffic meets. The information flow rules identify the actions allowed between configured zones of interfaces,
- The TOE passes the network traffic if it meets a configured allow policy and does not meet a configured drop policy]; and
- the selected information flow policy rule specifies that the information flow is to be permitted, and what specific operation from FDP\_IFC.1 is to be applied to that information flow].

FDP\_IFF.1.3(4) - The TSF shall enforce the [*the following:* 

- *fragmentation rule:* 
  - prior to applying the information policy ruleset, the TOE completely reassembles fragmented packets;
- *stateful packet inspection rules:* 
  - whenever a packet is received that is not associated with an allowed established session (e.g., the SYN flag is set without the ACK flag being set), the information flow policy ruleset, as defined in FDP\_IFF.1.2(4), is applied to the packet;
  - otherwise, the TSF associates a packet with an allowed established session using the stateful packet attributes].

FDP\_IFF.1.4(4) - The TSF shall provide the following [the Security Administrator shall have the capability to view all information flows allowed by the information flow policy ruleset before the ruleset is applied].

FDP\_IFF.1.5(4) - The TSF shall explicitly authorize an information flow based on the following rules: [*none*].

FDP\_IFF.1.6(4) - The TSF shall explicitly deny an information flow based on the following rules:

- [*The TOE shall reject requests for access or services where the presumed source identity of the information received by the TOE is not included in the set of source identifiers for the source subject;*
- The TOE shall reject requests for access or services where the presumed source identity of the information received by the TOE specifies a broadcast identity;
- The TOE shall reject requests for access or services where the presumed source identity of the information received by the TOE specifies a loopback identifier;
- The TOE shall reject requests in which the information received by the TOE contains the route (set of host network identifiers) by which information shall flow from the source subject to the destination subject.]

#### FDP\_RIP.2 Full residual information protection

FDP\_RIP.2.1 - The TSF shall ensure that any previous information content of a resource is made unavailable upon the [deallocation of the resource from] all objects.

# 5.2.4 Identification and authentication (FIA)

#### FIA\_AFL.1Authentication failure handling

**FIA\_AFL.1.1** - **Refinement:** The TSF shall detect when [*a Security administrator configurable positive integer*] **of** unsuccessful authentication attempts occur related to [*administrators attempting to authenticate remotely, and authorized IT entities*].

**FIA\_AFL.1.2** – **Refinement:** When the defined number of unsuccessful authentication attempts has been met or surpassed, the TSF shall [at the option of the Security Administrator prevent the remote administrators or authorized IT entity from performing activities that require authentication until an action is taken by the Security Administrator, or until a Security Administrator defined time period has elapsed].

#### FIA\_ATD.1(1) User attribute definition

FIA\_ATD.1.1(1) – **Refinement**: The TSF shall maintain the following list of security attributes belonging to an **administrator**:

- *a)* [*user identifier(s):* 
  - role;
  - [[<u>none</u>]]; and
- b) [[<u>user password</u>]]].

#### FIA\_ATD.1(2) User Attribute definition

FIA\_ATD.1.1(2) **Refinement:** The TSF shall maintain the following list of security attributes belonging to **authorized subjects**:

- a) [subject identity (IP address/Host Name);
- b) [*IKE Security Attributes*].

#### FIA\_UAU.1 Timing of authentication (for TOE services)

FIA\_UAU.1.1 - The TSF shall allow [for an IP-based network stack: ICMP, [none]; or for a non-IP based network stack: [none]] on behalf of the user to be performed before the user is authenticated.

FIA\_UAU.1.2 - The TSF shall require each user to be successfully authenticated before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

#### FIA\_UAU.2 User authentication before any action

FIA\_UAU.2.1 – **Refinement:** The TSF shall require **each user** to be successfully authenticated before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

#### FIA\_UID.2 User identification before any action

FIA\_UID.2.1 - The TSF shall require each user to identify itself before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.

#### FIA\_USB.1 User-subject binding

FIA\_USB.1.1: The TSF shall associate the following user security attributes with subjects acting on the behalf of that user: [

- *Remote IT Entity (VPN Peers): subject identity (IP address/host name), IKE security attributes*
- User: Username, user password, Role].

FIA\_USB.1.2: The TSF shall enforce the following rules on the initial association of user security attributes with subjects acting on the behalf of users: [

- *Remote IT Entity (VPN Peers): Whenever the TOE negotiates an IPSec connection with a VPN Peer, the TOE compares the IKE Secure attributes to the internally store peer profile and associates the peer with the profile;*
- User: Whenever a user presents authentication credentials to the TOE via the TOE CLI, the TOE verifies that the user is a known user. The TOE associates the user with the profile and role within the TOE].

FIA\_USB.1.3: The TSF shall enforce the following rules governing changes to the user security attributes associated with subjects acting on the behalf of users: [

- *Remote IT Entity (VPN Peers): the security attributes (Subject identity/ IKE Security Attributes) can only be changed by renegotiating a IPSec connection with the remote IT entity;*
- User: the security attributes associated with a user may only be changed by a Security Administrator].

# 5.2.5 Security management (FMT)

# FMT\_MOF.1(1) Management of security functions behavior (TSF non-Cryptographic Self-test)

FMT\_MOF.1.1(1) - The TSF shall restrict the ability to <u>determine and modify the behavior</u> <u>of</u> the functions:

• [TSF Self-Test (FPT\_TST\_(EXT).1)]

to [the Security Administrator].

#### FMT\_MOF.1(2) Management of security functions behavior (Cryptographic Self-test)

FMT\_MOF.1.1(2) - The TSF shall restrict the ability to <u>enable</u>, <u>disable</u> the functions

• [Crypto Self-Test (FPT\_TST.1(1), and Key Generation Self-Test (FPT\_TST.1(2)]

to [the Cryptographic Administrator].

#### FMT\_MOF.1(3) Management of security functions behavior (audit and alarms)

FMT\_MOF.1.1(3) - The TSF shall restrict the ability to <u>enable</u>, <u>disable</u>, <u>determine</u> and <u>modify the behavior of</u> the functions

• [Security Audit (FAU\_SAR).\*] to [an Administrator].

#### FMT\_MOF.1(4) Management of security functions behavior (audit and alarms)

FMT\_MOF.1.1(4) - The TSF shall restrict the ability to <u>enable</u>, <u>disable</u>, <u>determine</u> and <u>modify the behavior of</u> the functions

- [Security Audit Analysis (FAU\_SAA); and
- Security Audit (FAU\_SEL)]

to [the Security Administrator].

#### FMT\_MOF.1(5) Management of security functions behavior (audit and alarms)

FMT\_MOF.1.1(5) - The TSF shall restrict the ability to enable, or disable the functions

• [Security Alarms (FAU\_ARP)]

to [the Security Administrator].

# FMT\_MOF.1(6) Management of security functions behavior (available TOE-services for unauthenticated users)

FMT\_MOF.1.1(6) - The TSF shall restrict the ability to enable, disable the functions

• [[for an IP-based network stack: ICMP, [none], or for a non-IP-based network stack: [none]].

to [the Security Administrator].

#### FMT\_MOF.1(7) Management of security functions behavior (quota mechanism)

FMT\_MOF.1.1(7) - The TSF shall restrict the ability to determine the behavior of the functions

- [Controlled connection-oriented resource allocation (FRU\_RSA.1(2));
- An administrator-specified network identifier;
- set of administrator-specified network identifiers;
- administrator-specified period of time]

to [the Security Administrator].

#### FMT\_MOF.1(8) Management of security functions behavior (Authentication Attempts)

 $FMT_MOF.1.1(8)$  - The TSF shall restrict the ability to <u>enable</u>, <u>disable</u>, <u>determine</u> and <u>modify the behavior</u> of the functions

• [Authentication failure handling (FIA\_AFL.1.2) configurable integer of unsuccessful authentication attempts that occurs related to a user's authentication to [the Security Administrator]].

#### **FMT\_MSA.1(1)** Management of security attributes

FMT\_MSA.1.1(1) - The TSF shall enforce the [UNAUTHENTICATED INFORMATION FLOW SFP, UNAUTHENTICATED TOE SERVICES SFP] to restrict the ability to [manipulate] the security attributes [referenced in the indicated polices] to [the Security Administrator].

#### FMT\_MSA.1(2) Management of security attributes

FMT\_MSA.1.1(2) - The TSF shall enforce the [VPN SFP] to restrict the ability to [manipulate] the security attributes [referenced in the indicated polices] to [an-the security Administrator].

#### FMT\_MSA.1(3) Management of security attributes

FMT\_MSA.1.1(3) - The TSF shall enforce the [UNAUTHENTICATED INFORMATION FLOW SFP] to restrict the ability to [query, modify, delete, [no other operations]] the security attributes [settable percentage of storage capacity [the security attributes contained within administratively configured policy rule-sets]] to [Security Administrator [no other roles]].

#### FMT\_MSA.3(1) Static attribute initialization

FMT\_MSA.3.1(1) - **Refinement:** The TSF shall enforce the [*VPN SFP*] to provide *restrictive* default values for the (**security attributes**) **information flow policy ruleset** that **is** (**are**) used to enforce the SFP.

FMT\_MSA.3.2(1) The TSF shall allow the [*Security Administrator*] to specify alternative initial values to override the default values when an object or information is created.

#### FMT\_MSA.3(2) Static attribute initialization

FMT\_MSA.3.1(2) – **Refinement:** The TSF shall enforce the [UNAUTHENTICATED INFORMATION FLOW SFP] to provide *restrictive* default values for the **information flow policy ruleset** that is used to enforce the SFP.

FMT\_MSA.3.2(2) - The TSF shall allow the [*Security Administrator*] to specify alternative initial values to override the default values when an object or information is created.

#### FMT\_MSA.3(3) Static attribute initialization (services)

FMT\_MSA.3.1(3) – **Refinement:** The TSF shall enforce the [UNAUTHENTICATED TOE SERVICES SFP] to provide *restrictive* default values for (security attributes) the set of **TOE services available to unauthenticated users (that are used to enforce the SFP).** 

FMT\_MSA.3.2(3) - The TSF shall allow the [*Security Administrator*] to specify alternative initial values to override the default values when an object or information is created.

#### FMT\_MTD.1(1) Management of TSF data

FMT\_MTD.1(1) - **Refinement:** The TSF shall restrict the ability to [query, modify, delete, clear, [no other operations] all the [TSF data except cryptographic security data, the time and date used to form the time stamps in FPT\_STM.1, and the deletion of audit data] to [the Security administrator].

Application Note: Note that FMT\_MTD.1(3) grants the time and date privileges to the Security Administrator. This does not conflict with this requirement as the original wording was intended to specify privileges of all administrators, and it was made more restrictive for this Security Target.

#### FMT\_MTD.1(2) Management of TSF data

FMT\_MTD.1.1(2) - The TSF shall restrict the ability to *modify* the [*cryptographic security data*] to [*the Cryptographic Administrator*].

#### FMT\_MTD.1(3) Management of TSF data

FMT\_MTD.1.1(3) - The TSF shall restrict the ability to [set] the [time and date used to form the time stamps in FPT\_STM.1] to [the Security Administrator or authorized IT entity].

#### FMT\_MTD.1(4) Management of TSF data

FMT\_MTD.1.1(4) – The TSF shall restrict the ability to [query, modify, delete, create, [none]] the [information flow policy rules] to [the Security Administrator].

#### FMT\_MTD.2(1) Management of limits on TSF data

FMT\_MTD.2.1(1) - The TSF shall restrict the specification of the limits for [quotas on transport-layer connections] to [the Security Administrator].

FMT\_MTD.2.2(1) - The TSF shall take the following actions, if the TSF data are at, or exceed, the indicated limits: [

- For maximum sessions, new connections are not accepted /created;
- For maximum incomplete sessions, the oldest half-opened sessions are deleted. If there are no half-open sessions, new connections are not accepted/created;

• For maximum high/low sessions over one minute, the oldest half-opened sessions are deleted. If there are no half-open sessions, new connections are not accepted/created].

#### FMT\_MTD.2(2) Management of limits on TSF data

FMT\_MTD.2.1(2) - The TSF shall restrict the specification of the limits for [quotas on controlled connection-oriented resources] to [the Security Administrator].

FMT\_MTD.2.2(2) - The TSF shall take the following actions, if the TSF data are at, or exceed, the indicated limits: [

- For maximum sessions, new connections are not accepted /created;
- For maximum incomplete sessions, the oldest half-opened sessions are deleted. If there are no half-open sessions, new connections are not accepted/created;
- For maximum high/low sessions over one minute, the oldest half-opened sessions are deleted. If there are no half-open sessions, new connections are not accepted/created].

#### FMT\_MTD.2(3) Management of limits on TSF data

FMT\_MTD.2.1(3) - The TSF shall restrict the specification of the limits for [*percentage of storage capacity for audit records*] to [*the Security Administrator*].

FMT\_MTD.2.2(3) - The TSF shall take the following actions, if the TSF data are at, or exceed, the indicated limits: [*Terminates all active processes or overwrites the oldest audit records with the newest records, per administrative configuration*].

#### FMT\_REV.1 Revocation

FMT\_REV.1.1 – The TSF shall restrict the ability to revoke security attributes associated with the [*users, information flow policy ruleset, services available to unauthenticated users,* [subjects, objects] within the TSC to [*the Security Administrator*<sup>3</sup>].

FMT\_REV.1.2 - **Refinement:** The TSF shall **immediately** enforce the:

- [revocation of a user's role (Security Administrator, Cryptographic Administrator, Audit Administrator);
- *changes to the information flow policy ruleset when applied;*
- *disabling of a service available to unauthenticated users;*
- changes to the set of security associations with peer TOEs and
- [<u>none</u>]].

#### FMT\_SMF.1 Specification of Management Functions

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> No role can revoke users's attributes (role or password). This must be done by the SuperAdmin outside of the evaluated configuration.

FMT\_SMF.1.1 The TSF shall be capable of performing the following security management functions: [

- 1. restrict the ability to invoke determine and modify the behavior of the functions TSF Self-Test (FPT\_TST\_(EXT).1) to the Security Administrator;
- 2. restrict the ability to enable, disable the functions TSF Self-Test (FPT\_TST.1(1) and FPT\_TST.1(2)) to the Cryptographic Administrator;
- 3. restrict the ability to enable, disable, determine and modify the behavior of the functions Security Audit (FAU\_SAR.1, FAU\_SAR.2, FAU\_SAR.3) to an Audit Administrator;
- 4. restrict the ability to enable, disable, determine and modify the behavior of the functions Security Audit Analysis (FAU\_SAA); and Security Audit (FAU\_SEL) to the Security Administrator;
- 5. restrict the ability to enable, or disable the functions Security Alarms (FAU\_ARP) to the Security Administrator
- 6. restrict the ability to determine the behavior of the functions: Controlled connectionoriented resource allocation (FRU\_RSA.1(2)); an administrator-specified network identifier; set of administrator-specified network identifiers; administrator-specified period of time to the Security Administrator.
- 7. enforce administrator-specified maximum quotas of the following resources: [controlled connection-oriented resources] that users associated with [an administrator-specified network identifier and a set of administrator-specified network identifiers] can use over an administrator-specified period of time.
- 8. enforce the [UNAUTHENTICATED INFORMATION FLOW SFP] to provide restrictive default values security attributes that are used to enforce the SFP;
- 9. [none]
- 10. restrict the ability to [query, modify, delete, clear, [none]] all the [TSF data except cryptographic security data and the time and date used to form the time stamps in FPT\_STM.1] to the Security administrators or authorized IT entities (FMT\_MTD.1(1)).
- 11. restrict the ability to modify the cryptographic security data to the Cryptographic Administrator (FMT\_MTD.1(2));
- 12. restrict the ability to set the time and date used to form the time stamps in *FPT\_STM.1* to the Security Administrator or authorized IT entity.
- 13. [none]
- 14. [none]
- 15. restrict the ability to query, modify, delete, create, [none] the [information flow policy rules] to [the Security Administrator] (FMT\_MTD.1.1(4)).
- 16. restrict the ability to revoke security attributes associated with the [users, subjects, objects, [other additional resources]] within the TSC to Security administrator (FMT\_REV.1)
- 17. restrict the specification of the limits for quotas on transport-layer connections to the Security Administrator (FMT\_MTD.2 (1));
- 18. restrict the specification of the limits for quotas on controlled connection-oriented resources to the Security Administrator (FMT\_MTD.2 (2));
- 19. restrict the specification of the limits for percentage of storage capacity for audit records (FMT\_MTD.2(3)) to the Security Administrator.

- 20. restrict the ability to enable, disable, determine and modify the behavior of the functions of Authentication failure handling (FIA\_AFL.1.2) to configure an integer of unsuccessful authentication attempts that occurs related to a user's authentication to the Security Administrator.
- 21. [none]].
- 22. restrict the ability to enable, disable the functions [[for an IP-based network stack: <u>ICMP</u>, [[none], or for a non-IP-based network stack:[none]] to [the Security Administrator].
- 23. restrict the ability to determine the behavior of the functions by an administrator specified network identifier; set of administrator specified network identifiers; administrator specified period of time] to [the Security Administrator];
- 24. enforce the [VPN SFP] to restrict the ability to manipulate the security attributes referenced in the indicated polices to the Security Administrator;
- 25. enforce the [VPN SFP] to provide restrictive default values for the information flow policy rule set security attributes that is used to enforce the SFP;
- 26. enforce the [UNAUTHENTICATED TOE SERVICES SFP] to provide restrictive default values security attributes that are used to enforce the SFP;
- 27. restrict the ability to query, modify, delete, create, [none] the VPN Policy rules to the Security Administrator;
- 28. [No additional Security Functions].

#### **FMT\_SMR.2** Restrictions on security roles

FMT\_SMR.2.1 - The TSF shall maintain the roles:

- [Security Administrator;
- Cryptographic Administrator (i.e., users authorized to perform cryptographic initialization and management functions);
- Audit Administrator;
- Authorized IT entities; and
- [<u>none</u>]].

FMT\_SMR.2.2 - The TSF shall be able to associate users with roles.

FMT\_SMR.2.3 - The TSF shall ensure that the conditions

- [All roles shall be able to administer the TOE locally;
- all roles shall be able to administer the TOE remotely;
- all roles are distinct; that is, there shall be no overlap of operations performed by each role, with the following exceptions:
- all administrators can review the audit trail; and
- *all administrators can invoke the self-tests*] are satisfied.

### 5.2.6 Protection of the TSF (FPT)

#### **FPT\_FLS.1** Failure with preservation of secure state

FPT\_FLS.1.1 The TSF shall preserve a secure state when the following types of failures occur: [*all failures*].

#### FPT\_ITA.1 Inter-TSF availability within a defined availability metric

FPT\_ITA.1.1 The TSF shall ensure the availability of [*network control data associated with the TOE supported routing protocols*] provided to a remote trusted IT product within [*the availability metrics defined in the following routing protocols*:

- BGP: None of the defined timers (ConnectRetry, Hold Time, KeepAlive, MinASOriginationInterval, and MinRouteAdvertisementInterval) are exceeded;
- *PIM:* None of the defined timers (holdtime timer, hello timer, expiration timer, and register-suppression timer) are exceeded;
- *IS-IS:* None of the defined timers (recallTimer, idleTimer, initialMinimumTimer, reserveTimer, holdingTimer) are exceeded;
- *OSPF:* None of the defined timers (Hello Timer, Wait Timer, Inactivity Timer, interval timer, retransmission timer) are exceeded;
- *RIP:* None of the defined timers (timeout timer, garbage-collection timer, routing-update timer) are exceeded;
- *MPLS: None of the defined TTLs are exceeded*]

given the following conditions [The TOE is persistently connected to a network].

#### FPT\_ITC.1 Inter-TSF confidentiality during transmission

FPT\_ITC.1.1 The TSF shall protect all TSF data transmitted from the TSF to a remote trusted IT product from unauthorized disclosure during transmission.

#### FPT\_ITI.1 Inter-TSF detection of modification

FPT\_ITI.1.1 The TSF shall provide the capability to detect modification of all TSF data during transmission between the TSF and a remote trusted IT product within the following metric: [*immediately when TSF data is received by the TOE*].

FPT\_ITI.1.2 The TSF shall provide the capability to verify the integrity of all TSF data transmitted between the TSF and a remote trusted IT product and perform [*disregard the information*] if modifications are detected.

#### **FPT\_RCV.1 Manual Recovery**

FPT\_RCV.1.1 **Refinement:** After **a** [failure or service discontinuity], the TSF shall enter a maintenance mode where the ability to return **the TOE** to a secure state is provided.

#### **FPT\_RCV.2** Automated Recovery

FPT\_RCV.2.1 When automated recovery from [*a failure or service discontinuity*] is not possible, the TSF shall enter a maintenance mode where the ability to return to a secure state is provided.

FPT\_RCV.2.2 For [

- Dual RP/ESP TOE configuration (ASR 1006)
  - Any single hardware failure on the active RP
  - Any single hardware failure on the standby RP
  - Any single hardware failure on the active ESP
  - Any single hardware failure on the standby ESP
  - Any single software failure on the active RP
  - Any single software failure on the standby RP
  - Any single software failure on the active ESP
  - Any single software failure on the standby ESP
- Any TOE configuration (ASR1002, ASR 1002f, ASR 1004)
  - The TOE experiences a RNG failure in which the consecutive identical random numbers are generated,]

the TSF shall ensure the return of the TOE to a secure state using automated procedures.

#### **FPT\_RPL.1 Replay detection**

FPT\_RPL.1.1 - The TSF shall detect replay for the following entities: [*TSF data and security attributes*].

FPT\_RPL.1.2 - The TSF shall perform: [reject data, audit event and [*no other actions*]] when replay is detected.

#### **FPT\_STM.1** Reliable time stamps

FPT\_STM.1.1 - The TSF shall be able to provide reliable time stamps for its own use.

#### FPT\_TDC.1 Inter-TSF basic TSF data consistency

FPT\_TDC.1.1 The TSF shall provide the capability to consistently interpret [*routing data associated with the TOE supported protocols listed in FPT\_PRO\_(EXT).1*] when shared between the TSF and another trusted IT product.

FPT\_TDC.1.2 The TSF shall use [*the routing data is interpreted according to the rules of the protocol with which it is associated (supported protocols are listed in FPT\_PRO\_(EXT).1).*] when interpreting the TSF data from another trusted IT product.

#### **FPT\_TST.1(1) TSF Testing (for cryptography)**

FPT\_TST.1.1(1) **Refinement:** The TSF shall run a suite of self tests **in accordance with FIPS PUB 140-2 and Appendix A of this profile** <u>during initial start-up (on power on), at</u> the request of the **cryptographic administrator (on demand)**, **under various conditions**  **defined in section 4.9.1 of FIPS 140-2, and periodically (at least once a** day) to demonstrate the correct operation of the **following cryptographic functions:** 

- a) key error detection;
- b) cryptographic algorithms;
- c) **RNG/PRNG**

FPT\_TST.1.2(1) **Refinement:** The TSF shall provide authorized **cryptographic** administrators with the capability to verify the integrity of **TSF data related to the cryptography by using TSF-provided cryptographic functions**.

FPT\_TST.1.3(1) **Refinement:** The TSF shall provide authorized **cryptographic administrators** with the capability to verify the integrity of stored TSF executable code **related to the cryptography by using TSF-provided cryptographic functions**.

#### **FPT\_TST.1(2) TSF Testing** (for key generation components)

FPT\_TST.1.1(2) **Refinement**: The TSF shall **perform** self tests **immediately after generation of a key** to demonstrate the correct operation **of each key generation component**. If any of these tests fails, that generated key shall not be used, the cryptographic module shall react as required by FIPS PUB 140-2 for failing a self-test, and this event will be audited

FPT\_TST.1.2(2) **Refinement:** The TSF shall provide authorized **cryptographic administrators** with the capability to verify the integrity of TSF data **related to the key generation by using TSF-provided cryptographic functions**.

FPT\_TST.1.3(2) **Refinement:** The TSF shall provide authorized **cryptographic administrators** with the capability to verify the integrity of stored TSF executable code **related to the key generation by using TSF-provided cryptographic functions**.

### 5.2.7 Resource Utilization (FRU)

#### FRU\_RSA.1(1) Maximum quotas

FRU\_RSA.1.1(1) - **Refinement:** The TSF shall enforce maximum quotas of the following resources: [transport-layer representation] that **a** *source subject identifier/users* can use *over a specified period of time*.

#### **FRU\_RSA.1**(2) Maximum quotas (controlled connection-oriented quotas)

FRU\_RSA.1.1(2) – **Refinement:** The TSF shall enforce **administrator-specified** maximum quotas of the following resources: [controlled connection-oriented resources] that users associated with an administrator-specified network identifier and a set of administrator-specified network identifiers can use over an administrator-specified period of time.

# 5.2.8 TOE Access (FTA)

#### FTA\_SSL.1 TSF-initiated session locking

FTA\_SSL.1.1 – **Refinement:** The TSF shall lock **a local** interactive session after [*a Security Administrator-specified time period of inactivity*] by:

- a) clearing or overwriting display devices, making the current contents unreadable;
- b) disabling any activity of the user's data access/display devices other than unlocking the session.

FTA\_SSL.1.2 - The TSF shall require the user to re-authenticate prior to unlocking the session.

#### FTA\_SSL.2 User-initiated locking

FTA\_SSL.2.1 – **Refinement:** The TSF shall allow user-initiated locking of the user's own **local** interactive session, by:

- a) clearing or overwriting display devices, making the current contents unreadable;
- b) disabling any activity of the user's data access/display devices other than unlocking the session.

FTA\_SSL.2.2 - The TSF shall require the user to re-authenticate prior to unlocking the session.

#### FTA\_SSL.3 TSF-initiated termination

FTA\_SSL.3.1 - **Refinement:** The TSF shall terminate session after a [Security Administrator-configurable time interval of session inactivity].

#### FTA\_TAB.1 Default TOE access banners

FTA\_TAB.1.1 - **Refinement:** Before establishing **a user/administrator** session the TSF shall display **only a Security Administrator-specified** advisory **notice and consent** warning message regarding unauthorized use of the TOE.

#### FTA\_TSE.1 TOE session establishment

FTA\_TSE.1.1 - **Refinement:** The TSF shall be able to deny establishment of an administrator session based on [*location, time, and day*].

# 5.2.9 Trusted Path/Channels (FTP)

#### **FTP\_ITC.1(1)** Inter-TSF trusted channel (Prevention of Disclosure)

FTP\_ITC.1.1(1) - **Refinement:** The TSF shall **use encryption to** provide a **trusted** communication channel between itself and **authorized IT entities** that is logically distinct from other communication channels and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the channel data from disclosure.

FTP\_ITC.1.2(1) **Refinement:** The TSF shall permit *the TSF*, *or the authorized IT entities* to initiate communication via the trusted channel.

FTP\_ITC.1.3(1) - The TSF shall initiate communication via the trusted channel for [all authentication functions, [[*exchange of network control information (PIM, IS-IS, BGP, OSPF, RIP, and MPLS)*]].

#### FTP\_ITC.1(2) Inter-TSF trusted channel (Detection of Modification)

FTP\_ITC.1.1(2) - **Refinement:** The TSF shall **use a cryptographic signature** to provide a **trusted** communication channel between itself and **authorized IT entities** that is logically distinct from other communication channels and provides assured identification of its end points and **detection of the modification of data**.

FTP\_ITC.1.2(2) - **Refinement:** The TSF shall permit *the TSF*, *or the authorized IT entities* to initiate communication via the trusted channel.

FTP\_ITC.1.3(2) - The TSF shall initiate communication via the trusted channel for [all authentication functions, [[*exchange of network control information (PIM, IS-IS, BGP, OSPF, RIP, and MPLS)*]].

#### FTP\_TRP.1(1) Trusted path

FTP\_TRP.1.1(1) - **Refinement:** The TSF shall provide a **an encrypted** communication path between itself and *remote* **administrators**, **authenticated** users that is logically distinct from other communication paths and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the communicated data from disclosure.

FTP\_TRP.1.2(1) - The TSF shall permit *remote users* to initiate communication via the trusted path.

FTP\_TRP.1.3(1) – **Refinement:** The TSF shall require the use of the trusted path for *user authentication*, all remote administration actions, [none].

#### FTP\_TRP.1(2) Trusted path

FTP\_TRP.1.1(2) - **Refinement:** The TSF shall **use a cryptographic signature to** provide a communication path between itself and remote **Administrators and authenticated users** that is logically distinct from other communication paths and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the communicated data from **detection of the modification of data**.

FTP\_TRP.1.2(2) - The TSF shall permit *remote users* to initiate communication via the trusted path.

FTP\_TRP.1.3(2) – **Refinement:** The TSF shall require the use of the trusted path for *initial user authentication*, all remote administration actions, and [none].

# 5.2.10 Extended Components Definition

This Security Target contains fourteen Security Functional Requirements that are not drawn from existing CC part 2 Security Function Requirements.

The identification structure of each Security Functional Requirement is modeled after the Security Functional Requirements included in CC part 2. The identification structure includes the following:

- A. Class The extended SFRs included in this ST are part of the FAU, FCS, FIA, or FPT class of requirements
- B. Family The extended SFRs included in this ST are part of several SFR families
- C. Component The extended SFRs are at several component levels, including, 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5.

#### FAU\_ARP\_ACK\_(EXT).1 Security alarm acknowledgement

FAU\_ARP\_ACK\_(EXT).1.1 – The TSF shall display the alarm message identifying the potential security violation and make accessible the audit record contents associated with the auditable event(s) until it has been acknowledged. If the Security Administrator configures the TOE to generate an optional audible alarm, an audible alarm will sound until acknowledged by an administrator. Once the alarm is acknowledged, it will be reset to zero.

FAU\_ARP\_ACK\_(EXT).1.2 – The TSF shall display an acknowledgement message identifying a reference to the potential security violation, a notice that it has been acknowledged, the time of the acknowledgement and the user identifier that acknowledged the alarm, at the:

- a) local console, and
- b) remote administrator sessions that received the alarm.

#### FAU\_STG\_(EXT).4 Site-Configurable Prevention of Audit Loss

FAU\_STG\_(EXT).4.1 - **Refinement**: The TSF shall provide the **Security** Administrator the capability to select one or more of the following actions:

- *a)* prevent auditable events, except those taken by the Security Administrator and Audit Administrator,
- b) overwrite the oldest stored audit records and
- c) [<u>no other actions</u>]

to be taken if the audit trail is full.

FAU\_STG\_(EXT).4.2 - **Refinement**: The TSF shall **enforce the Security Administrator's selection(s)** if the audit trail is full.
#### FCS\_BCM\_(EXT).1 Explicit: Baseline Cryptographic Module

FCS\_BCM\_(EXT).1.1 - All FIPS-approved cryptographic functions implemented by the TOE shall be implemented in a cryptomodule that is FIPS 140-2 validated, and perform the specified cryptographic functions in a FIPS-approved mode of operation. The FIPS 140-2 validation shall include an algorithm validation certificate for all FIPS-approved cryptographic functions implemented by the TOE.

**FCS\_BCM\_(EXT).1.2** All cryptographic modules implemented in the TOE [<u>As a</u> combination of hardware and software shall have a minimum overall rating of FIPS PUB 140-2, Level 1 and also meet FIPS PUB 140-2, Level 3 for the following: Cryptographic Module Ports and Interfaces; Roles, Services and Authentication; *Cryptographic Key* <u>Management</u>; <sup>4</sup> and Design Assurance.]

#### FCS\_CKM\_(EXT).2 Explicit: Cryptographic Key Handling and Storage

FCS\_CKM\_(EXT).2.1 - The TSF shall perform a key error detection check on each transfer of key (internal, intermediate transfers).

FCS\_CKM\_(EXT).2.2 - The TSF shall store <u>persistent secret and private</u> keys <u>when not in</u> <u>use</u> in encrypted form or using split knowledge procedures.

FCS\_CKM\_(EXT)\_2.3 - The TSF shall destroy non-persistent cryptographic keys after a cryptographic administrator-defined period of time of inactivity.

FCS\_CKM\_(EXT).2.4 The TSF shall prevent archiving of expired (private) signature keys.

#### FCS\_COP\_(EXT).1 Explicit: Random Number Generation

FCS\_COP\_(EXT).1.1 - The TSF shall perform all random number generation (RNG) services in accordance with a FIPS-approved RNG [*FIPS approved 3-key TDES based ANSI X9.31 compliant pseudo RNG*] seeded by [a combination of hardware-based and software-based entropy sources.]

FCS\_COP\_(EXT).1.2 - The TSF shall defend against tampering of the random number generation (RNG)/ pseudorandom number generation (PRNG) sources.

#### FCS\_IKE\_(EXT).1 Internet Key Exchange

FCS\_IKE\_(EXT).1.1 –The TSF shall provide cryptographic key establishment techniques in accordance with RFC 2409 as follows(s):

• Phase 1, the establishment of a secure authenticated channel between the TOE and another remote VPN endpoint, shall be performed using one of the following, as configured by the security administrator:

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup> Note that there are no testable requirements to differentiate Level 1 through 4 for our implementation of cryptographic keys and key management, so for Section 7, we can't say AS07.30 applies/passes and then claim Level 3 for that section.

- Main Mode
- Aggressive Mode
- Phase 2, negotiation of security services for IPsec, shall be done using Quick Mode, using SHA-1 as the pseudo-random function. Quick Mode shall generate key material that provides perfect forward secrecy. The use of SHA-256 and SHA-384 as the PRF in IKEv1 KDF is also allowed.

FCS\_IKE\_(EXT).1.2 – The TSF shall require the x of  $g^xy$  be randomly generated using a FIPS-approved random number generator when computation is being performed. The minimum size of x shall be twice the number of bits of the strength level associated with the negotiated DH group per table 2 of NIST SP 800-57. The nonce sizes are to be between 8 and 256 bytes. Nonces shall be generated in a manner such that the probability that a specific nonce value will be repeated during the life a specific IPsec SA is less than 1 in 2^(bit strength of the negotiated DH group).

FCS\_IKE\_(EXT).1.3 - When performing authentication using pre-shared keys, the key shall be generated using the FIPS approved random number generator specified in FCS\_COP\_(EXT).1.1.

FCS\_IKE\_(EXT).1.4 - The TSF shall compute the value of SKEYID (as defined in RFC 2409), using SHA-1 as the pseudo-random function. The use of SHA-256 and SHA-384 as the PRF in IKEv1 KDF is also allowed. The TSF shall be capable of authentication using the methods for

- Signatures: SKEYID = prf(Ni\_b | Nr\_b, g^xy)
- Pre-shared keys: SKEYID = prf(pre-shared-key, Ni\_b | Nr\_b)
- [Authentication using Public key encryption, computing SKEYID as follows: SKEYID = prf(prf(Ni\_b | Nr\_b), CKY-I | CKY-R), no other authentication methods]

FCS\_IKE\_(EXT).1.5 - The TSF shall compute authenticated keying material as follows:

- SKEYID\_d = prf(SKEYID,  $g^xy | CKY-I | CKY-R | 0)$
- SKEYID\_a = prf(SKEYID, SKEYID\_d | g^xy | CKY-I | CKY-R | 1)
- SKEYID\_e = prf(SKEYID, SKEYID\_a | g^xy | CKY-I | CKY-R | 2)
- [none]]

FCS\_IKE\_(EXT).1.6 - To authenticate the Phase 1 exchange, the TSF shall generate HASH\_I if it

is the initiator, or HASH\_R if it is the responder as follows:

- HASH\_I = prf(SKEYID, g^xi | g^xr | CKY-I | CKY-R | SAi\_b | IDii\_b)
- HASH\_R = prf(SKEYID,  $g^xr | g^xi | CKY-R | CKY-I | SAi_b | IDir_b)$

FCS\_IKE\_(EXT).1.7 - The TSF shall be capable of authenticating IKE Phase 1 using the following methods as defined in RFC 2409, as configured by the security administrator:

- a) **Authentication with digital signatures**: The TSF shall use [RSA, "no other digital signature algorithms"]
- b) when an RSA signature is applied to HASH I or HASH R it must be first PKCS#1 encoded. The TSF shall check the HASH\_I and HASH\_R values sent against a computed value to detect any changes made to the proposed transform negotiated in phase one. If changes are detected the session shall be terminated and an alarm shall be generated.
- c) [[X.509 certificates Version 3 [no other versions]] X.509 V3 implementations, if implemented, shall be capable of checking for validity of the certificate path, and at option of SA, check for certificate revocation.
- d) **Authentication with a pre-shared key**: The TSF shall allow authentication using a pre-shared key.

FCS\_IKE\_(EXT).1.8. - The TSF shall compute the hash values for Quick Mode in the following way

HASH(1) = prf(SKEYID\_a, M-ID |[any ISAKMP payload after HASH(1) header contained in the message)] HASH(2) = prf(SKEYID\_a, M-ID | Ni\_b | [any ISAKMP payload after HASH(2) header contained in the message)] HASH(3) = prf(SKEYID\_a, 0 | M-ID | Ni\_b | Nr\_b)

FCS\_IKE\_(EXT).1.9 - The TSF shall compute new keying material during Quick Mode as follows:

[when using perfect forward secrecy KEYMAT = prf(SKEYID\_d, g(qm)^xy | protocol | SPI | Ni\_b | Nr\_b), When perfect forward secrecy is not used KEYMAT = prf(SKEYID\_d | protocol | SPI | Ni\_b | Nr\_b)]

FCS\_IKE\_(EXT).1.10The TSF shall at a minimum, support the following ID types:ID\_IPV4\_ADDR,ID\_IPV6\_ADDR,ID\_FQDN,ID\_IPV4\_ADDR\_SUBNET,ID\_IPV6\_ADDR\_SUBNET,ID\_IPV4\_ADDR\_RANGE,ID\_IPV6\_ADDR\_RANGE, ID\_DER\_ASN1\_DN, ID\_DER\_ASN1\_GN, ID\_KEY\_ID].

#### FCS\_GDOI\_(EXT).1 Group Domain of Interpretation

FCS\_GDOI\_(EXT).1.1 - The TSF shall provide negotiation of security services for IPsec in accordance with RFC 3457 as an extension of phase 2 of the protocol defined in RFC 2409, negotiation of security services for IPsec.

FCS\_GDOI\_(EXT).1.2 – The TSF shall provide the "GROUPKEY-PULL" registration protocol as defined in RFC 3457 that protects the key agreement packets providing confidentiality and integrity for the communications between a new group member and the group controller.

FCS\_GDOI\_(EXT).1.3 – The TSF shall provide the "GROUPKEY-PUSH" rekey protocol as defined in RFC 3457 that protects the key agreement packets as they pass from the controller

to the members, for confidentiality using the AES encryption algorithm specified in  $FCS\_COP.1.1(1)$ .

#### **Extended Requirements Rationale – FCS\_GDOI\_(EXT).1:**

- A. Class The FCS class of SFRs identifies cryptographic functionality provided by the TOE. FCS\_GDOI\_(EXP).1 describes the cryptographic functionality associated with the Group Domain of Interpretation extension of IPSec (defined in RFC 3457) provided by the TOE. This is cryptographic functionality and consistent with the FCS class of SFRs.
- B. Family This is a newly created SFR family, GDOI. This family was created to describe the Group Domain of Interpretation functionality provided by the TOE. There is not a family defined in the Common Criteria Part 2 to address Group Domain of Interpretation. This is why the new family was created.
- C. Component This is the only component in the family. This is why the component is identified as "1."

#### Management – FCS\_GDOI\_(EXP).1:

There are no management activities foreseen.

#### FIA\_UAU\_(EXT).5 Multiple authentication mechanisms

FIA\_UAU\_(EXT).5.1 - The TSF shall provide a local authentication mechanism, [none] to perform user authentication.

#### **FPT\_HA\_(EXT).1** High Availability

FPT\_HA\_(EXT).1.1 - The TSF provides hardware failover for any single hardware or software fault within the TSF for any TOE configuration which includes dual RPs/ESPs.

#### **Extended Requirements Rationale – FPT\_HA\_(EXT).1:**

- A. Class The FPT class of SFRs identifies TSF integrity functionality provided by the TOE. FPT\_HA\_(EXP).1 describes the high availability functionality provided by the TOE. High availability ensures that the integrity of the TOE and security functionality provided by the TOE are maintained even during specific failure events. This is integrity functionality and consistent with the FPT class of SFRs.
- B. Family This is a newly created SFR family, HA. This family was created to describe the high availability functionality provided by the TOE. There is not a family defined in the Common Criteria Part 2 to address the high availability functionality provided by the TOE. This is why the new family was created.
- C. Component This is the only component in the family. This is why the component is identified as "1."

#### Management – FPT\_HA\_(EXP).1

There are no management activities foreseen.

#### FPT\_PRO\_(EXT).1 Standard Protocol Usage

FPT\_PRO\_(EXT).1 - The TSF shall utilize the standard protocol mechanisms within the standard protocols [

- *a)* <u>*RFC* 1771: *BGP*;</u>
- *b)* <u>*RFC* 4601: *PIM*;</u>
- c) <u>RFC 1142: IS-IS;</u>
- *d)* <u>*RFC 2328: OSPF;*</u>
- *e)* <u>*RFC 2453: RIP;*</u>
- f) <u>*RFC 3031: MPLS*</u>].

#### FPT\_TST\_(EXT).1 Extended: TSF Testing

FPT\_TST\_(EXT).1.1 The TSF shall run a suite of self tests <u>during the initial start-up and also</u> <u>either periodically during normal operation</u>, or at the request of an authorized administrator to demonstrate the correct operation of the TSF.

FPT\_TST\_(EXT).1.2 The TSF shall provide authorized administrators with the capability to verify the integrity of stored TSF executable code through the use of the TSF-provided cryptographic services.

### 5.3 IT Environment Security Functional Requirements

This section identifies the Security Functional Requirements for the IT Environment. The IT Environment Security Functional Requirements that appear in the table, "Security Functional Requirements" are described in more detail in the following subsections.

Functional Component		
SFR Component ID Component Name		
Security Functional Requirements Directly Drawn from CC Part 2		
FTA_SSL.1	TSF-initiated session locking	
FTP_ITC.1(1)	Inter-TSF trusted channel	
FTP_ITC.1(2)	Inter-TSF trusted channel	
FTP_TRP.1(1)	Trusted path	
FTP_TRP.1(2)	Trusted path	

**Table 23 Security Functional Requirements** 

#### FTA\_SSL.1 TSF-initiated session locking

FTA\_SSL.1.1 – **Refinement:** The **IT Environment** shall lock **a local** interactive session after [*a Security Administrator-specified time period of inactivity*] by:

a) clearing or overwriting display devices, making the current contents unreadable;

b) disabling any activity of the user's data access/display devices other than unlocking the session.

FTA\_SSL.1.2 - The TSF shall require the user to re-authenticate prior to unlocking the session.

#### FTP\_ITC.1(1) Inter-TSF trusted channel (Prevention of Disclosure)

FTP\_ITC.1.1(1) - **Refinement:** The **IT Environment** shall provide a **trusted** communication channel between itself and the **TSF** that is logically distinct from other communication channels and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the channel data from disclosure.

FTP\_ITC.1.2(1) - **Refinement:** The **IT Environment** shall permit *the TSF* or the **IT Environment** to initiate communication via the trusted channel.

FTP\_ITC.1.3(1) - The **IT Environment** shall initiate communication via the trusted channel for [all authentication functions, [[*exchange of routing protocol information*].

#### FTP\_ITC.1(2) Inter-TSF trusted channel (Detection of Modification)

FTP\_ITC.1.1(2) - **Refinement:** The **IT Environment** shall provide **an encrypted** communication channel between itself and **the TSF** that is logically distinct from other communication channels and provides assured identification of its end points and **detection of the modification of data.** 

FTP\_ITC.1.2(2) - **Refinement:** The **IT Environment** shall permit *the TSF*, or **the IT Environment** to initiate communication via the trusted channel.

FTP\_ITC.1.3(2) - The **IT Environment** shall initiate communication via the trusted channel for [all authentication functions, [[*exchange of routing protocol information*]].

#### FTP\_TRP.1(1) Trusted path (Prevention of Disclosure)

FTP\_TRP.1.1(1) - **Refinement:** The **IT Environment** shall provide an **encrypted** communication path between itself and **the TSF** that is logically distinct from other communication paths and provides assured identification of its end points and protection of the communicated data from modification or disclosure.

FTP\_TRP.1.2(1) - The **IT Environment** shall permit *remote administrators* **of the TSF** to initiate communication to the TSF via the trusted path.

FTP\_TRP.1.3(1) – **Refinement:** The **IT Environment** shall **initiate** the use of the trusted path for **all remote administration actions**, [*administrative user authentication*].

#### **FTP\_TRP.1**(2) Trusted path (Detection of Modification)

FTP\_TRP.1.1(2) - **Refinement:** The **IT Environment** shall provide an **encrypted** communication path between itself and **the TSF** that is logically distinct from other communication paths and provides assured identification of its end points **and detection of the modification of data.** 

FTP\_TRP.1.2(2) - **Refinement:** The **IT Environment** shall permit *remote* **administrators of the TSF** to initiate communication **to the TSF** via the trusted path.

FTP\_TRP.1.3(2) – **Refinement:** The **IT Environment** shall **initiate** the use of the trusted path for *user authentication, all remote administration actions,* [none].

## 5.4 TOE SFR Hierarchies and Dependencies

This section of the Security Target demonstrates that the identified TOE and IT Security Functional Requirements include the appropriate hierarchical SFRs and dependent SFRs. The following table lists the TOE Security Functional Components and the Security Functional Components each are hierarchical to and dependent upon and any necessary rationale.

N/A in the Rationale column means the Security Functional Requirement has no dependencies and therefore, no dependency rationale is required. Satisfied in the Rationale column means the Security Functional Requirements dependency was included in the ST.

SFR	Dependencies	Rationale
FAU_ARP_ACK_(EX	No Dependencies	Not applicable.
T).1		
FAU_ARP.1	FAU_SAA.1	Met by FAU_SAA.1
FAU_GEN.1	FPT_STM.1	Met by FPT_STM.1
EAU CEN 2	FAU_GEN.1	Met by FAU_GEN.1
TAU_OLN.2	FIA_UID.1	Met by FAU_UID.2
FAU_SAA.1	No Dependencies	Not applicable.
FAU_SAR.1	FAU_GEN.1	Met by FAU_GEN.1
FAU_SAR.2	FAU_SAR.1	Met by FAU_SAR.1
FAU_SAR.3	FAU_SAR.1	Met by FAU_SAR.1
EALL SEL 1	FAU_GEN.1	Met by FAU_GEN.1
FAU_SEL.I	FMT_MTD.1	Met by FMT_MTD.1(1)
FAU_STG.1	FAU_GEN.1	Met by FAU_GEN.1
FAU_STG.3	FAU_STG.1	Met by FAU_STG.1
FAU_STG_(EXT).4	FAU_GEN.1	Met by FAU_GEN.1
FCS_BCM_(EXT).1	No Dependencies	Not applicable.
FCS_CKM.1(1)	FCS_CKM.2 or FCS_COP.1	Met by FCS_COP.1(1)
		Met by FCS_COP.1(2)
		Met by FCS_COP.1(3)
		Met by FCS_COP.1(4)
	FCS_CKM.4	Met by FCS_CKM.4
	FCS_COP_(EXT).1	Met by FCS_COP_(EXT).1
FCS_CKM.1(2)	FCS_CKM.2 or FCS_COP.1	Met by FCS_COP.1(1)
		Met by FCS_COP.1(2)
		Met by FCS_COP.1(3)
		Met by FCS_COP.1(4)

 Table 24: TOE Security Functional Requirements Dependency Rationale

SFR	Dependencies	Rationale	
	FCS_CKM.4	Met by FCS_CKM.4	
FCS_CKM.2	FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2 or	Met by FCS_CKM.1(1)	
	FCS_CKM.1	Met by FCS_CKM.1(2)	
	FCS_CKM.4	Met by FCS_CKM.4	
FCS_CKM_(EXT).2	No Dependencies	Not applicable.	
FCS_CKM.4	FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2 or	Met by FCS_CKM.1(1)	
	FCS_CKM.1	Met by FCS_CKM.1(2)	
FCS_COP.1(1)	FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2 or	Met by FCS_CKM.1(1)	
	FCS_CKM.1	Met by FCS_CKM.1(2)	
	FCS_CKM.4	Met by FCS_CKM.4	
FCS_COP.1(2)	FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2 or	Met by FCS_CKM.1(1)	
	FCS_CKM.1	Met by FCS_CKM.1(2)	
	FCS_CKM.4	Met by FCS_CKM.4	
FCS_COP.1(3)	FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2 or	Met by FCS_CKM.1(1)	
	FCS_CKM.1	Met by FCS_CKM.1(2)	
	FCS_CKM.4	Met by FCS_CKM.4	
FCS_COP.1(4)	FDP_ITC.1 or FDP_ITC.2 or	Met by FCS_CKM.1(1)	
	FCS_CKM.1	Met by FCS_CKM.1(2)	
	FCS_CKM.4	Met by FCS_CKM.4	
FCS_COP_(EXT).1	No Dependencies	Not applicable.	
FCS_IKE_(EXT).1	FCS_COP_(EXT).1	Met by FCS_COP_(EXT).1	
FCS_GDOI_(EXT).1	FCS_CKM.2	Met by FCS_CKM.2	
	FCS_COP.1	Met by FCS_COP.1(1)	
FDP_IFC.1(1)	FDP_IFF.1	Met by FDP_IFF.1(1)	
FDP_IFC.1(2)	FDP_IFF.1	Met by FDP_IFF.1(2)	
FDP_IFC.1(4)	FDP_IFF.1	Met by FDP_IFF.1(4)	
FDP_IFF.1(1)	FDP_IFC.1	Met by FDP_IFC.1(1)	
	FMT_MSA.3	Met by FMT_MSA.3(1)	
FDP_IFF.1(2)	FDP_IFC.1	Met by FDP_IFC.1(2)	
	FMT_MSA.3	Met by FMT_MSA.3(2)	
FDP_IFF.1(4)	FDP_IFC.1	Met by FDP_IFC.1(4)	
	FMT_MSA.3	Met by FMT_MSA.3(2)	
FDP_RIP.2	No Dependencies	Not applicable.	
FIA_AFL.1	FIA_UAU.1	Met by FIA_UAU.1	
		Met by FIA_UAU.2	
FIA_ATD.1(1)	No Dependencies	Not applicable.	
FIA_ATD.1(2)	No Dependencies	Not applicable.	
FIA_UAU.1	FIA_UID.1	Met by FIA_UID.2	
FIA_UAU.2	FIA_UID.1	Met by FIA_UID.2	
FIA_UAU_(EXT).5	No Dependencies	Not applicable.	
FIA_UID.2	No Dependencies	Not applicable.	
FIA_USB.1	FIA_ATD.1	Met by FIA_ATD.1(1)	
FMT_MOF.1(1)	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2	
	FMT_SMF.1	Met by FMT_SMF.1	
FMT_MOF.1(2)	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2	
	FMT_SMF.1	Met by FMT_SMF.1	
FMT_MOF.1(3)	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2	
	FMT_SMF.1	Met by FMT_SMF.1	
FMT_MOF.1(4)	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2	
	FMT_SMF.1	Met by FMT_SMF.1	
FMT_MOF.1(5)	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2	

SFR	Dependencies	Rationale
	FMT_SMF.1	Met by FMT_SMF.1
FMT_MOF.1(6)	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2
	FMT_SMF.1	Met by FMT_SMF.1
FMT_MOF.1(7)	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2
	FMT_SMF.1	Met by FMT_SMF.1
FMT_MOF.1(8)	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2
	FMT_SMF.1	Met by FMT_SMF.1
FMT_MSA.1(1)	FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1	Met by FDP_IFC.1(2)
		Met by FDP_IFC.1(4)
	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2
	FMT_SMF.1	Met by FMT_SMF.1
FMT_MSA.1(2)	FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1	Met by FDP_IFC.1(1)
	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2
	FMT_SMF.1	Met by FMT_SMF.1
FMT_MSA.1(3)	FDP_ACC.1 or FDP_IFC.1	Met by FDP_IFC.1(2)
		Met by FDP_IFC.1(4)
	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2
	FMT_SMF.1	Met by FMT_SMF.1
FMT_MSA.3(1)	FMT_MSA.1	Met by FMT_MSA.1(2)
	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2
FMT_MSA 3(2)	FMT_MSA.1	Met by FMT_MSA.1(1)
	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2
FMT MSA 3(3)	FMT_MSA.1	Met by FMT_MSA.1(1)
	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2
FMT_MTD.1(1)	FMT_SMF.1	Met by FMT_SMF.1
	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2
FMT_MTD.1(2)	FMT_SMF.1	Met by FMT_SMF.1
	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2
FMT_MTD.1(3)	FMT_SMF.1	Met by FMT_SMF.1
	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2
FMT_MTD.1(4)	FMT_SMF.1	Met by FMT_SMF.1
	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2
FMT_MTD.2(1)	FMT_MID.1	Met by FMT_MTD.1(1)
	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2
$FM1_MID.2(2)$	FMT_MID.1	Met by FMT_MTD.1(1)
	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2
$FM1_M1D.2(3)$	FMT_MTD.1	Met by FMT_MTD.1(1)
EMT DEV 1	FMT_SMR.1	Met by FMT_SMR.2
FMI_KEV.I	FIMI_SMR.1	Net applicable
FMT_SMF.1		Not applicable.
FMI_SMK.2	No Dependencies	Net applicable
$\frac{\Gamma\Gamma\Gamma}{\Gamma}$	No Dependencies	Not applicable.
$\frac{\Gamma\Gamma\Gamma_{\PiA}(E\Lambda\Gamma).\Gamma}{EDT_{\Pi}T\Lambda_{I}}$	No Dependencies	Not applicable.
FPT_ITC 1	No Dependencies	Not applicable
FPT_ITL1	No Dependencies	Not applicable.
FDT RCV 1	AGD OPE 1	Met by ACD_OPE 1
FPT RCV 2	AGD OPE 1	Met by AGD_OPE 1
FPT RPI 1	No Dependencies	Not applicable
FPT_STM 1	No Dependencies	Not applicable
FDT DDA (EVT) 1	No Dependencies	Not applicable
$111_EKO_(EA1).1$	No Dependencies	Not applicable.

SFR	Dependencies	Rationale
FPT_TDC.1	No Dependencies	Not applicable.
FPT_TST.1(1)	No Dependencies	Not applicable.
FPT_TST.1(2)	No Dependencies	Not applicable.
FPT_TST_(EXT).1	No Dependencies	Not applicable.
FRU_RSA.1(1)	No Dependencies	Not applicable.
FRU_RSA.1(2)	No Dependencies	Not applicable.
FRU_RSA.1(3)	No Dependencies	Not applicable.
FTA_SSL.1	FIA_UAU.1	Met by FIA_UAU.2
FTA_SSL.2	FIA_UAU.1	Met by FIA_UAU.2
FTA_SSL.3	No Dependencies	Not applicable.
FTA_TAB.1	No Dependencies	Not applicable.
FTA_TSE.1	No Dependencies	Not applicable.
FTP_ITC.1(1)	No Dependencies	Not applicable.
FTP_ITC.1(2)	No Dependencies	Not applicable.
FTP_TRP.1(1)	No Dependencies	Not applicable.
FTP_TRP.1(2)	No Dependencies	Not applicable.

## 5.5 Security Assurance Requirements

### 5.5.1 SAR Requirements

The TOE assurance requirements for this ST is EAL4 Augmented ALC\_FLR.2 derived from Common Criteria Version 3.1, Revision 3. The Security Target Claims conformance to EAL4 Augmented with ALC\_FLR.2. The assurance requirements are summarized in the table below, with the extended requirements in **bold** print.

Assurance Class	Components	Components Description
DEVELOPMENT	ADV_ARC.1	Security Architectural Description
	ADV_FSP.4	Complete functional specification
	ADV_IMP.1	Implementation of the TSF
	ADV_TDS.3	Basic modular design
GUIDANCE DOCUMENTS	AGD_OPE.1	Operational user guidance
	AGD_PRE.1	Preparative User guidance
LIFE CYCLE SUPPORT	ALC_CMC.4	Product support, acceptance procedures and automation
	ALC_CMS.4	Problem tracking CM coverage
	ALC_DEL.1	Delivery procedures
	ALC_DVS.1	Identification of security measures
	ALC_FLR.2	Flaw Reporting Procedures
	ALC_LCD.1	Developer defined life-cycle model
	ALC_TAT.1	Well-defined development tools
TESTS	ATE_COV.2	Analysis of coverage
	ATE_DPT.1	Testing: modular design
	ATE_FUN.1	Functional testing
	ATE_IND.2	Independent testing - sample
VULNERABILITY	AVA_VAN.3	Focused vulnerability analysis
ASSESSMENT		

 Table 25: Assurance Measures

### 5.5.2 Security Assurance Requirements Rationale

This Security Target claims conformance to EAL4 Augmented with ALC\_FLR.2. This target was chosen to ensure that the TOE has a moderate level of assurance in enforcing its security functions when instantiated in its intended environment which imposes no restrictions on assumed activity on applicable networks. Augmentation was chosen to address having flaw remediation procedures and correcting security flaws as they are reported.

### 5.6 Assurance Measures

The TOE satisfies the identified assurance requirements. This section identifies the Assurance Measures applied by Cisco to satisfy the assurance requirements. The table below lists the details.

Component	How requirement will be met
ADV_ARC.1	The architecture of the TOE that is used to protect the TSF documented by Cisco in their
	development evidence.
ADV_FSP.4	The externally visible interfaces of the TOE used by the users of the TOE along with the
	description of the security functions and a correspondence between the interfaces and the
	security functions from the ST are documented by Cisco in their development evidence. The
	development evidence also contains a tracing to the SFRs described in this ST.
ADV_IMP.1	Cisco provides access to the TSF implementation to the evaluation lab.
ADV_TDS.3	The design of the TOE will be described in the development evidence. This evidence will also
	contain a tracing to the TSFI defined in the FSP.
AGD_OPE.1	The administrative guidance is detailed to provide descriptions of how administrative users of
	the TOE can securely administer the TOE using those functions and interfaces detailed in the
	guidance.
AGD_PRE.1	Cisco documents the installation, generation, and startup procedures so that the users of the TOE
	can put the components of the TOE in the evaluated configuration.
ALC_CMC.4	Cisco performs configuration management on configuration items of the TOE. Configuration
	management is performed on the TOE and the implementation representation of the TOE.
ALC_CMS.4	Cisco uniquely identifies configuration items and each release of the TOE has a unique
	reference. The Configuration Management documentation contains a configuration item list.
ALC_DEL.1	Cisco documents the delivery procedure for the TOE to include the procedure on how to
	download certain components of the TOE from the Cisco website and how certain components
	of the TOE are physically delivered to the user. The delivery procedure detail how the end-user
	may determine if they have the TOE and if the integrity of the TOE has been maintained.
	Further, the delivery documentation describes how to acquire the proper license keys to use the
	TOE components.
ALC_DVS.1	Cisco implements security controls over the development environment. Cisco meets these
	requirements by documenting the security controls.
ALC_FLR.2	Cisco documents the flaw remediation and reporting procedures so that security flaw reports
	from TOE users can be appropriately acted upon, and TOE users can understand how to submit
	security flaw reports to the developer.
ALC_LCD.1	Cisco documents the TOE development life-cycle to meet these requirements.
ALC_TAT.1	Cisco uses well-defined development tools for creating the TOE.
ATE_COV.2	Cisco demonstrates the interfaces tested during functional testing using a coverage analysis.
ATE_DPT.1	Cisco demonstrates the TSF subsystems tested during functional testing using a depth analysis.
ATE_FUN.1	Cisco functional testing documentation contains a test plan, a description of the tests, along with
	the expected and actual results of the test conducted against the functions specified in the ST.
ATE_IND.2	Cisco will help meet the independent testing by providing the TOE to the evaluation facility.

 Table 26: Assurance Measures

Component	How requirement will be met
AVA_VAN.3	Cisco will provide the TOE for testing.

# **6 TOE SUMMARY SPECIFICATION**

### 6.1 **TOE Security Functional Requirement Measures**

This chapter identifies and describes how the Security Functional Requirements identified above are met by the TOE.

Table 2	27:	How	TOE	SFRs	Measures
---------	-----	-----	-----	------	----------

TOE SFRs	How the SFR is Met
FAU_ARP.1	The TOE supports a local, directly connected (or connected through a terminal
	server), management interface and remote management through a SSHv2 secure
	tunnel. A security alarm is immediately displayed and the contents of the audit
	record that triggered the alarm is accessible to both the local and remote
	administrator whenever a potential security violation is detected by the TOE. The
	TOE also provides the facility for the Security Administrator to enable an
	auditable alarm that sounds for both the local and remote administrator through
	the TOE administrative CLI. This audible alarm sounds until it is acknowledged
	by an administrative user. These alarms are stored in the same internal syslog
	server as other audit events. Each alarm contains the following information, the
	date and time the alarm was generated, the type of event that caused the alarm,
	and where the event that caused the alarm took place.
FAU_ARP_ACK_(EXT).1	The TOE displays a security alarm to both the local and remote administrator each
	time a potential security violation is identified. Additionally, the TOE supports an
	auditable alarm that may be configured to sound by the Security Administrator.
	These alarms are displayed/sound until they are acknowledged by an
	administrator. After the alarm is acknowledged through the administrative CLI, a
	confirmation message is displayed. These alarms are stored in the same internal
	syslog server as other audit events. Each alarm contains the following
	information, the date and time the alarm was generated, the type of event that
	caused the alarm, and where the event that caused the alarm took place.
FAU_GEN.I	The TOE generates an audit record that is stored internally within the TOE
	to be generated include, audit searching and sorting related events that cause audit records
	related events, events related to the enforcement of information flow policies
	identification and authentication related events, and administrative events (the
	specific events and the contents of each audit record are listed in the table within
	the FALL GEN 1 SER "Auditable Events Table"). Each of the events is specified
	in the syslog internal to the TOE in enough detail to identify the user for which
	the event is associated when the event occurred where the event occurred the
	outcome of the event and the type of event that occurred. Note that the audit
	functionality is enabled by default in the evaluated configuration and cannot be
	disabled.
FAU GEN.2	The syslog entry associated with each auditable event generated by the TOE is
_	described in sufficient detail to allow an administrative user reviewing the audit
	log to identify which user the auditable event is associated with.
FAU_SAA.1	The TOE internally tracks the number of occurrences associated with specific
_	types of auditable event (for example, authentication failures or information flow
	policy violations). Once the administratively configured threshold of a specific
	event type is met, the TOE identifies the event as a security violation. This
	happens regardless of the length of time that has lapsed between failed
	authentication attempts. This functionality is configured through the TOE CLI by
	the Security Administrator. The specific events that can be monitored include:
	• Security Administrator specified number of authentication failures;

TOE SFRs	How the SFR is Met		
	<ul> <li>Security Administrator specified number of Information Flow policy violations by an individual presumed source network identifier (e.g., IP address) within an administrator specified time period;</li> <li>Security Administrator specified number of Information Flow policy</li> </ul>		
	violations to an individual destination network identifier within an administrator specified time period:		
	<ul> <li>Security Administrator specified number of Information Flow policy violations to an individual destination subject service identifier within an administrator specified time period;</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Security Administrator specified Information Flow policy rule, or group of rule violations within an administrator specified time period;</li> <li>Any detected replay of TSF data or security attributes;</li> </ul>		
	• Any failure of the cryptomodule/cryptographic self-tests;		
	• Any failure of the other key generation self-tests;		
	• Any failure of the other TSF self-tests;		
	• Security Administrator specified number of encryption failures;		
	• Security Administrator specified number of decryption failures;		
	• Security Administrator specified number of Phase 1 authentication		
	failures when negotiating the Internet Key Exchange protocol;		
	• Security Administrator specified number of failures occur during Phase 2 negotiation;		
FAU_SAR.1	The TOE provides the ability for the administrators of the TOE to view all audit		
	events stored within the TOE. The TOE provides CLI commands that allow an		
	administrative user to display the audit event to the console screen.		
FAU_SAR.2	The TOE controls the access available to an administrative user to only the		
	resource associated with the user's role. The TOE does not provide any methods		
	to access the internally stored audit records. All attempts to view the audit data		
	of the TOE are able to access the audit records stored within the TOE		
FAU SAR 3	Through the TOE CLI administrative interface, the TOE provides the ability for		
	authorized administrative users to search and sort the internally stored audit		
	records. The TOE provides dedicated CLI to all Administrators to facilitate search		
	and sorting of audit records within the TOE. The criteria for which audit records		
	can be searched and sorted include, user identity, source subject identity,		
	destination subject identity, ranges of one or more: (dates, times, user identities,		
	subject service identifiers, or transport layer protocol), Rule identity, TOE		
	network interfaces.		
FAU_SEL.I	tracked by the TOE. This canability is provided through the TOE CLI		
	administrative interface available to the Security Administrator. After configured		
	by a Security administrator, the TOE will exclude specific auditable events.		
	Otherwise, all types of auditable events will be included in the audit records. The		
	criteria that are configurable by the Security Administrator include: user identity,		
	event type, network identifier (the IP address or "console" identification), subject		
	service identifier (type of service), success of auditable security events, failure of		
	auditable security events, and rule identity.		
	when an audit event is excluded, the event is generated but not stored in TOE		
FALL STG 1	Through the TOF CLL administrative interface, the TOF provides the ability for		
1110_010.1	authorized administrative users (audit administrator) to delete audit records stored		
	within the TOE. The TOE provides dedicated CLI commands that are only		
	available to the Audit Administrator to facilitate the deletion of audit records.		
FAU_STG_(EXT).4	The TOE monitors the amount of free storage space available for audit records		

TOE SFRs	How the SFR is Met
	stored internal to the TOE. After the storage space available for audit records is
	used to a specific level, the TOE takes specific actions as configured by the
	Security Administrator. The possible actions taken by the TOE include stopping
	the TOE to prevent further audit events until the TOE is restarted by an authorized
	administrator or overwriting the oldest audit records with the newest audit
	records.
FAU_STG.3	The TOE immediately displays a message to the TOE administrative users (both
	local and remote) whenever the Security Administrator configured audit storage
	threshold is met. This threshold is configured through the TOE provided CLI
	administrative interface by the Security Administrator. Additionally, the TOE
	will send an auditable alarm to the administrator work station, if the TOE is
	configured to send auditable alarms.
FCS_BCM_(EXT).1	The cryptography provided by the TOE has been FIPS 140-2 validated to overall
	level 2 with sections 3, 7, and 10 validated to level 3. Please see FIPS certificate
	# 1390 for validation details.
FCS_CKM.1(1)	Symmetric cryptographic keys used within the TOE for IPSec and SSHv2 secure
	management are generated using the implemented FIPS-approved ANSI X9.31
	PRNG. The TOE key generation canabilities have been verified as part of the
	TOE's FIPS 140-2 validation The symmetric keys used for IPSec are created
	through the IKE protocol interaction. The keys are transient and are protected in
	transit by a TCP protocol CRC. The symmetric keys used for SSHv2 are created
	through the SSHv2 protocol interaction. The keys are transient and are protected
	by the security mechanisms present in the SSHy2 protocol Eurther details
	regarding the FIPS validation can be found in Certificate #1390 Cisco ASR1002
	Series Router Cisco ASR1004 Series Router Cisco ASR1006 Series Router
ECS CKM 1(2)	Asymmetric gruntographic kays used within the TOE for IPSec and SSHV2 secure
1C5_CKW.1(2)	Asymmetric cryptographic keys used within the TOE for it see and SSTIV2 secure
	DPNG. The TOE key generation canchilities have been varified as part of the
	TOE's EIDS 140.2 validation. Asymptetic leavintegrity is varified by performing
	TOE SFIFS 140-2 valuation. Asymmetric key integrity is verified by performing
	a pair-wise key consistency check required by FIPS. Further details regarding the
	Cisco ASD 1004 Series Deuter, Cisco ASD 1006 Series Deuter
ECS CVM 2	Used ASK1004 Selles Koulei, Cisco ASK1000 Selles Koulei.
FCS_CKWI.2	when a generated key pair is not explicitly designated as exportable a signing
	private key is not extractable from the TOE and may not be distributed to other
	entities. A generated key pair designated for export may be retrieved from TOE in
	a cryptographically protected format only. This functionality was verified as part
	of the TOE FIPS 140-2 validation. A key pair may be imported manually by
	cutting and pasting its ASCII-nex representation, imported in a PEM or PKCS#12
	bundle. Upon key pair import it is verified for consistency. This is a mandatory
	FIPS requirement. The key used to encrypt administrative authentication
	credentials may be entered through the administrative CLI wither through a
	directly connected console or over an encrypted SSHv2 administrative session.
	Further details regarding the FIPS validation can be found in Certificate #1390,
	Cisco ASR1002 Series Router, Cisco ASR1004 Series Router, Cisco ASR1006
	Series Router.
	NOTE: In support of NIST SP 800-56, the TOE supports DH primitive according
	to Section 5.7.1.1 of FIPS SP800-56A. The TOE supports PKCS#7 wrapped
	certificates for ISAKMP.
FCS_CKM_(EXT).2	After IPsec or SSHv2 encryption and authentication keys are generated within the
	TOE they are transferred into the cryptographic coprocessor within the TOE. The
	keys are packaged into a message which is moved internally within the TOE over
	a TCP/IP based reliable IPC mechanism. TCP/IP provides a built-in mechanism
	for checking message payload integrity.
	The Security Administrator has the ability to limit the lifetime of inactive

TOE SFRs	How the SFR is Met
FCS_CKM 4	symmetric cryptographic keys used in IPsec security associations (SA) by configuring the IPsec SA lifetime, the Dead Peer Detection or the Idle Peer Detection IPsec SA properties. The TOE also provides the Security Administrator the ability to limit the lifetime of symmetric cryptographic keys used in IKE SA by specifying their maximal lifetime. Idle IKE SA's are destroyed when the lifetime expires. A Security Administrator enforces lifetime of asymmetric cryptographic key pairs associated with a digital certificate by specifying certificate validity period when requesting a certificate from a Certificate Authority during the certificate enrollment procedure. When a certificate and a corresponding private key are imported in a protected cryptographic bundle into TOE certificate validity is verified including the certificate expiration date. The import operation is rejected if the certificate has expired. This functionality was verified as part of the TOE FIPS 140-2 validation. Further details regarding the FIPS validation can be found in Certificate #1390, Cisco ASR1002 Series Router, Cisco ASR1004 Series Router, Cisco ASR1006 Series Router.
	is no longer of use to the TOE. The key and CSP zeroization capabilities of the TOE have been verified as part of the TOE's FIPS 140-2 validation. Further details regarding the FIPS validation can be found in Certificate #1390, Cisco ASR1002 Series Router, Cisco ASR1004 Series Router, Cisco ASR1006 Series Router.
FCS_COP.1(1)	The TOE provides AES encryption and decryption in support of IPSec tunneling and SSHv2 secure management. AES data encryption (128-bit, 196-bit, and 256- bit) is the encryption/decryption option that is used within SSHv2 communications with the TOE. Specifically, AES is used to encrypt the following traffic, IKE Session traffic, IPSec session traffic, SSHv2 session traffic, and GDOI traffic. The assymmetric encryption and decryption as used in these protocols was evaluated as part of the TOE's FIPS 140-2 validation. Additionally, AES can optionally be chosen by the administrator to encrypt stored administrative authentication credentials. Further details regarding the FIPS validation can be found in Certificate #1390, Cisco ASR1002 Series Router, Cisco ASR1004 Series Router, Cisco ASR1006 Series Router.
FCS_COP.1(2)	The TOE provides cryptographic signatures in support of IPSec tunneling and SSHv2 secure management. The TOE provides the RSA option in support of SSHv2 key establishment. RSA (3072-bit and 4096-bit) is used in the establishment of IPSec and SSHv2 key establishment. For SSHv2, RSA host keys are supported. The symmetric encryption and decryption as used in these protocols was evaluated as part of the TOE's FIPS 140-2 validation. Further details regarding the FIPS validation can be found in Certificate #1390, Cisco ASR1002 Series Router, Cisco ASR1004 Series Router, Cisco ASR1006 Series Router.
FCS_COP.1(3)	The TOE provides SHS hashing in support of IPSec tunneling and SSHv2 secure management. The TOE provides the SHS hashing option in support of SSHv2 key establishment. SHS hashing (SHA-1) is used in the establishment of IKE sessions, IPSec sessions, and SSHv2 sessions. The hashing used in these protocols was evaluated as part of the TOE's FIPS 140-2 validation. Further details regarding the FIPS validation can be found in Certificate #1390, Cisco ASR1002 Series Router, Cisco ASR1004 Series Router, Cisco ASR1006 Series Router.
FCS_COP.1(4)	The TOE provides Diffie-Hellman Key Exchange services in support of IPSec tunneling and SSHv2 secure management. The TOE provides the Diffie-Hellman key agreement (groups 1, 14, and 16) option in support of SSHv2 key establishment. This is used to support both the transport and user authentication

TOE SFRs	How the SFR is Met
	protocols within SSH. The key agreement used in these protocols was evaluated as part of the TOE's FIPS 140-2 validation. Further details regarding the FIPS validation can be found in Certificate #1390, Cisco ASR1002 Series Router, Cisco ASR1004 Series Router, Cisco ASR1006 Series Router. During the FIPS 140-2 testing, the source code associated with the Diffie-Hellman Key Exchange is verified for correctness. Also, the TOE implements a ModExp POST. This self test was verified during the FIPS 140-2 validation testing. NOTE: In support of NIST SP 800-56, supports FFC DH primitive according to Section 5.7.1.1 of FIPS SP800-56A. The TOE supports PKCS#7 wrapped certificates for ISAKMP.
FCS_COP_(EXT).1	In support of the provided cryptography, the TOE implements a pseudo Random Number Generator. This PRNG that is implemented is a FIPS-approved 3-key TDES based ANSI X9.31 compliant PRNG seeded from both a hardware and software entropy source. The TSF prevents tampering of the seeding entropy sources through the FIPS 140-2 physical security mechanisms. FIPS 140-2 includes physical security requirements that prevent the tampering of any cryptographic key or seeding material stored within the cryptographic module. Additionally, all entropy is only stored internally to the cryptographic module in DRAM and cannot be accessed internally. The CSTL performing the FIPS 140-2 validation verified that there is no way to access entropy as part of the cryptographic services supported with this RNG include IPSec key establishment and SSHv2 key establishment. This service was evaluated as part of the TOE's FIPS 140-2 validation. Further details regarding the FIPS validation can be found in Certificate #1390, Cisco ASR1002 Series Router, Cisco ASR1004 Series Router, Cisco ASR1006 Series Router.
FCS_IKE_(EXT).1	<ul> <li>The TOE provides the cryptographic services necessary to support IPSec connections with remote IT entities wishing to pass information through an IPSec protected tunnel. The TOE fully supports Internet Key Exchange (IKE), RFC 2409, as follows:</li> <li>Phase 1, the establishment of a secure authenticated channel between the TOE and another remote VPN endpoint, shall be performed using one of the following, as configured by the security administrator, Main Mode, Aggressive Mode</li> <li>Phase 2, negotiation of security services for IPsec, shall be done using Quick Mode, using SHA-1 as the pseudo-random function. Quick Mode shall generate key material that provides perfect forward secrecy. The use of SHA-256 and SHA-384 as the PRF in IKEv1 KDF although allowed by the requirements, is not supported.</li> <li>x of g^xy is randomly generated using a FIPS-approved random number generator</li> <li>The minimum size of x is twice the number of bits of the strength level associated with the negotiated DH group</li> <li>The nonce sizes are between 8 and 256 bytes.</li> <li>Nonces are generated in a manner such that the probability that a specific nounce value will be repeated during the life a specific IPsec SA is less than 1 in 2^(bit strength of the negotiated DH group)</li> <li>Preshared key are generated using the FIPS approved random number generator</li> <li>The TSF computes the value of SKEYID (as defined in RFC 2409), using SHA-1 as the pseudo-random function</li> <li>The following authentication methods are supported:     <ul> <li>SKEYID_d = prf(SKEYID, SKEYID, SKEYID d _g^xy CKY-I CKY-R 0)</li> <li>SKEYID_a = prf(SKEYID, SKEYID</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

TOE SFRs	How the SFR is Met
	R   1)
	<ul> <li>SKEYID_e = prf(SKEYID, SKEYID_a   g^xy   CKY-I   CKY-</li> </ul>
	R   2)
	• When authenticating a Phase 1 exchange, the TSF generates HASH_I if
	it is the initiator, or HASH_R if it is the responder as follows
	• HASH_I = prf(SKEYID, $g^x i   g^x r   CKY-I   CKY-R   SAi_b  $
	IDii b)
	• HASH $R = prf(SKEYID, g^xr   g^xi   CKY-R   CKY-I   SAi b$
	IDir_b)
	• The TSF is capable of authenticating IKE Phase 1 using the following
	methods
	• The TSF can use RSA digital signature
	• when an RSA signature is applied to HASH I or HASH R it is
	PKCS#1 encoded. The TSF checks the HASH I and HASH R
	values sent against a computed value to detect any changes
	made to the proposed transform negotiated in phase one. If
	changes are detected the session is terminated and an alarm
	generated.
	• For X.509 V3 certificates, the TOE is capable of checking for
	validity of the certificate path, and at option of SA, check for
	certificate revocation.
	• The TSF supports authentication using a pre-shared key.
	• The TSF computes the hash values for Quick Mode in the following
	way:
	• HASH(1) = prf(SKEYID_a, M-ID  [any ISAKMP payload after
	• HASH(1) header contained in the message)]
	$\circ$ HASH(2) = prf(SKEYID_a, M-ID   Ni_b   [any ISAKMP
	payload after HASH(2) header contained in the message)]
	$\circ  \text{HASH}(3) = \text{prf}(\text{SKEYID}_a, 0 \mid \text{M-ID} \mid \text{Ni}_b \mid \text{Nr}_b)$
	• The TSF computes new keying material during Quick Mode as follows:
	• when using perfect forward secrecy - KEYMAT =
	prf(SKEYID_d, g(qm)^xy   protocol   SPI   Ni_b   Nr_b),
	• When perfect forward secrecy is not used - KEYMAT =
	prf(SKEYID_d   protocol   SPI   Ni_b   Nr_b)
	<ul> <li>The TSF supports the following ID types: ID_IPV4_ADDR,</li> </ul>
	ID_IPV6_ADDR, ID_FQDN, ID_USER_FQDN,
	[ID_IPV4_ADDR_SUBNET, ID_IPV6_ADDR_SUBNET,
	ID_IPV4_ADDR_RANGE, ID_IPV6_ADDR_RANGE,
	ID_DER_ASN1_DN, ID_DER_ASN1_GN, ID_KEY_ID
	The TOE supports Diffie-Hellman groups 15 (3072 bit keys) and 16 (4096 bit
	keys). This is consistent with the requirements specified in the Protection Profiles
	for which conformance is claimed. Further details regarding the FIPS validation
	can be found in Certificate #1390, Cisco ASR1002 Series Router, Cisco ASR1004
	Series Router, Cisco ASR1006 Series Router.
FCS_GDOI_(EXT).1	In support of IPSec the TOE provides a key transport method of a key server
	transferring cryptographic keys and policy to authenticated and authorized group
	members over Internet Protocol. The TOE supports GDOI, RFC 3547. The TSF
	supports GROUPKEY PUSH and GROUPKEY PULL for keying and
	rekeying. This service was evaluated as part of the TOE's FIPS 140-2 validation.
	Further details regarding the FIPS validation can be found in Certificate #1390,
	CISCO ASK1002 SERIES KOULER, CISCO ASK1004 SERIES KOULER, CISCO ASK1006
EDB JEC 1(1)	The TOE facilitates VDN connections with other IDS as careful IT antitics. The
Γ <b>υτ_ιτ</b> υ.1(1)	The TOE factulates very connections with other tested capable 11 entities. The
	TOE first determines if the communication is anowed. After it is determined that

TOE SFRs	How the SFR is Met
	the VPN connection is allowed, the TOE participates in the IPSec communication based on the established IPSec parameters. When network packets are received on a TOE interface, the TOE verifies whether the packet is allowed or not and performs one of the following actions, pass packets to the destination without modifying; send IPSec encrypted and authenticated packets to a peer TOE using ESP in tunnel mode as defined in RFC 2406; decrypt and verify authentication and pass received packets from a peer TOE in tunnel mode using ESP.
FDP_IFC.1(2)	The TOE allows access to some TOE provided services prior to authentication. All traffic attempting to use TOE provided services are mediated by the TOE itself. The decisions to allow access to are made by the TOE for each access attempt. When network packets are received on a TOE interface that are destined to the TOE, the TOE verifies whether the packet is allowed or not and performs one of the following actions: accept the network packets; reject the network packets.
FDP_IFC.1(4)	<ul> <li>The TOE enforces information flow policies on traffic through the TOE from unauthenticated IT entities. These policies are enforced on network packets that are receive by TOE interfaces and leave the TOE through other TOE interfaces. When network packets are received on a TOE interface from an unauthenticated source, the TOE verifies whether the network traffic is allowed or not and performs one of the following actions,</li> <li>pass information by opening a relay connection through the TSF on behalf of the source subject to the destination subject, and with the TSF ensuring the following conditions: <ul> <li>the connection from the source subject is from a valid peer network,</li> <li>the new relay connection is established to the destination subject on a valid peer network.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
FDP_IFF.1(1)	<ul> <li>The TOE facilitates IPSec VPN communication with IPSec enabled IT devices. The TOE compares plaintext traffic received from IPSec VPN or destined to IPsec VPN to the configured information flow policies. If the information flow meets a configured information flow policy that allows the traffic, then traffic originated from a VPN tunnel or destined to a VPN tunnel is permitted. If the information flow meets a configured policy that denies traffic, such traffic is not permitted.</li> <li>The TOE allows network traffic for the following scenarios: <ul> <li>the presumed identity of the source subject is in the set of source subject identifiers;</li> <li>the information security attributes match the attributes in an information flow policy rule (contained in the information flow policy ruleset defined by the Security Administrator) according to the following algorithm. The TOE examines a packet's source IP address, destination ports and compares them to the configured VPN policy to determine the action to apply to the network packets. If the packet is a plaintext packet that matches a policy rule that allows packets to be passed without modification, the packet is passed without modification. If the packet is a plaintext packet that matches a policy rule that requires the TOE to send IPSec encrypted and authenticated packets to a peer, the TOE encrypts and applies a authentication mechanism to the packet using ESP in tunnel mode as defined in RFC 2406 and sends it to its peer. If the packet matches a policy that requires the TOE to decrypt, verify authentication and pass</li> </ul></li></ul>

TOE SFRs	How the SFR is Met
	<ul> <li>received packets from a peer TOE in tunnel mode using ESP, the TOE decrypts, verifies authentication and passes received packets from a peer TOE in tunnel mode using ESP and</li> <li>the selected information flow policy rule specifies that the information flow is to be permitted</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>The TOE denies network traffic for the following scenarios:</li> <li>The TOE rejects requests for access or services when the traffic is received from an IP or MAC address that is not included in the set of allowed addresses;</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>The TOE shall reject requests for access or services when the traffic is received from an IP or MAC address that is a broadcast identity;</li> <li>The TOE shall reject requests for access or services when the traffic is received from an IP address that is defined as a loopback address;</li> </ul>
	• The TOE shall reject requests in which the information received by the TOE contains the route by which the network traffic must travel Additionally, the TOE provides the Security Administrator with the capability to view all information flows allowed by the information flow policy ruleset before the policy is applied.
FDP_IFF.1(2)	The Security Administrator configures unauthenticated TOE Service policies for network traffic requesting services provided by the TOE.
	These information flow policies consist of a zone pair describing from where traffic is initiated to where traffic is destined, and description of the operation (whether the traffic is allowed or not allowed through the zone pair), and the type of traffic for which the policy is applicable (Source IP address, destination IP address, ICMP code, and ICMP message type). A zone is a configurable group of TOE interfaces for which the policies are applied. Traffic destined to the TOE itself is destined for a predefined zone known as the "self" zone. Before the policies are applied to the information flow policies, the Security Administrator can review the policies through the TOE CLI.
	When network traffic is received by the TOE requesting TOE services (i.e., ICMP), the source of the traffic (IP address) and the attributes of the packet are compared against the policy together through TCAM lookup. The TOE then allows or does not allow the traffic to flow depending on the information flow policy for which the traffic meets.
	In the following instances, the TOE rejects the information flow:
	<ul> <li>The TOE rejects requests for access or services where the source IP address of the network traffic is not included in the set of allowed source IP address;</li> <li>The TOE rejects requests for access or services where the source IP address of the network traffic is a broadcast address;</li> <li>The TOE rejects requests for access or services where the source IP address of the network traffic is a defined loopback address; and</li> <li>The TOE rejects requests for which the network traffic received by the TOE that specifies the route by which the traffic flows</li> </ul>
	The first packet in the flow is checked against zonepair+policy, then a session is created, then the following packets on the flow in both directions are allowed by the session. There is no need to have zonepair+policy on the other direction for this flow. Note that this does not apply to ICMP packets, since ICMP has no sessions. Session implies state and, as such, is more that one exchange. A single request-reply exchange does not constitute a session.

TOE SFRs	How the SFR is Met
	Additionally, the TOE provides the Security Administrator with the capability to view all information flows allowed by the information flow policy ruleset before the policy is applied.
FDP_IFF.1(4)	The Security Administrator configures unauthenticated information flow policies for network traffic flowing through the TOE.
	These information flow policies consist of a zone pair describing from where traffic is initiated to where traffic is destined, and description of the operation (whether the traffic is allowed or not allowed through the zone pair), and the type of traffic for which the policy is applicable (Source IP address, destination IP address, and transport layer protocol, source and destination port number. A zone is a configurable group of TOE interfaces for which the policies are applied.
	When network traffic is received the TOE, the TOE examines the attributes of the packet and compares the traffic to the configured information flow policies. The TOE finally allows or does not allow the traffic to flow depending on the information flow policy for which the traffic meets.
	The TOE also identifies the state of the traffic by inspecting the packets' sequence number, acknowledgement number, and flags for connection-oriented protocols, or by examining the source and destination address and traffic protocol for connectionless traffic. If the traffic is part of an established session, the traffic is allowed. Otherwise, the TOE allows or denies traffic to flow depending on the information flow policy for which the traffic meets.
	For messages received in fragments, the TOE also reassembles the packets using Virtual Fragment Reassembly. The TOE holds all fragments it receives until it receives a full message and assembles them. If the assembled message is permitted to flow, then the TOE passes the packet. The traffic is sent out as it was received, fragmented.
	The first packet in the flow is checked against zonepair+policy, then a session is created, then the following packets on the flow in both directions are allowed by the session. There is no need to have zonepair+policy on the other direction for this flow. Note that this does not apply to ICMP. A single request-reply exchange does not constitute a session.
	Additionally, the TOE provides the Security Administrator with the capability to view all information flows allowed by the information flow policy ruleset before the policy is applied.
FDP_RIP.2	The TOE ensures that packets transmitted from the TOE do not contain residual information from previous packets. Packets that are not the required length use a
	four-byte repeating pattern for padding. Residual data is never transmitted from the TOE. Once packet handling is completed its content is overwritten before memory buffer which previously contained the packet is reused. This applies to both data plane traffic and administrative session traffic.
	Additionally, the TOE ensures that there is no reuse among administrative sessions. The administrative roles are defined so that there is not overlapping administrative controls between administrators with different roles. Since,
	administrators of different roles do not act upon the same administrative objects there cannot be reuse between administrative sessions of separate roles. Each administrative session takes place either through a directly connected cable or over an encrypted remote session that is distinct from all other encrypted

TOE SFRs	How the SFR is Met
	administrative sessions.
FIA_AFL.1	The TOE provides the ability for the Security Administrator to configure the
	actions the TOE takes when a Security Administrator configured number of
	unsuccessful authentication attempts occur. The TOE can be configured either to
	prevent remote authentication for a specific period of time or disallow remote
	administration of the TOE until the Security Administrator has re-enabled remote
	authentication. All remote administration is via SSHv2. Note: Local
	authentication is always allowed
	VPN peers are not locked out by automated mechanisms. The IKEv1 protocol
	provides a pre-shared key method of an ISAKMP SA establishment and when
	this method is used any IKE neer which possesses a pre-shared secret key is
	considered legitimate due to the anonymous nature of the IKEV1 DH key
	exchange procedure. Thus, policy based VPN peer lockout can only be achieved
	by manual matheds (a.g. a pro-shared kay removal or modification)
ELA ATD $1(1)$	The TOE internelly maintaine a profile for each administrator outhorized to use
FIA_AID.I(I)	The TOE internally maintains a profile for each administrator authorized to use
	the IOE. For each administrator, the IOE maintains, the username associated
	with the user, the user's password, and the roles supported by the TOE.
	The user name and password are used by the TOE to authenticate an administrator
	wishing to gain access to the TOE management functionality. The role is used by
	the TOE to allow an authenticated user to assume a predefined TOE role.
FIA_ATD.1(2)	The TOE internally maintains a profile containing the identity (IP address/host
	name) and the IKE security attributes for each VPN Peer (identified as authorized
	subjects within the SFR) for which the TOE communicates.
FIA_UAU.1	The TOE provides the ability for an authorized administrator to configure all TOE
	services through the TOE administrative CLI. When a TOE interface is
	configured and the "no shut" command is applied it responds to the "to us"
	pings but passing any other traffic requires configuring an appropriate route.
FIA_UAU.2	Administrative access to the TOE is facilitated through the TOE provided CLI.
	The TOE mediates all actions through the CLI. Once a potential administrative
	user attempts to access the management functionality of the TOE through either a
	directly connected console or remotely through an SSHv2 connection, the TOE
	prompts the user for a user name and password. Only after the administrative user
	presents the correct authentication credentials will access to the TOE
	administrative functionality be granted. No access is allowed to the
	administrative facilities of the TOE until an administrator is authenticated.
FIA_UAU_(EXT).5	The TOE locally maintains authentication credentials. All authentication
	provided by the TOE is accomplished by comparing the supplied credentials to
	the locally stored credentials within the TOE. The User passwords may be stored
	in plaintext, hashed or encrypted with AES encryption depending on the options
	set when username is created.
FIA_UID.2	All users wishing to use TOE services are identified prior to being allowed access
	to any of the services. Once a user attempts to access the management
	functionality of the TOE, the TOE prompts the user for a user name and
	password. Only after the administrative user presents the correct identification and
	authentication credentials will access to the TOE functionality be granted.
FIA_USB.1	The TOE is able to associate the administrative users and VPN Peers with their
	identifying attributes stored internally to the TOE. When associating the
	administrative user/remote IT entities with the associated security attributes the
	TOE applies the following rules,
	• Remote IT Entity (VPN Peers/VPN Gateways): Whenever the TOE
	negotiates an IPSec connection with a VPN Peer, the TOE compares the
	IKE Secure attributes to the internally store peer profile and associates
	the peer with the profile;
	• User: Whenever a user presents authentication credentials to the TOE via

TOE SFRs	How the SFR is Met
	the TOE CLI, the TOE verifies that the user is a known user and verifies
	that the user is associated with the desired role. The TOE associates the
	user with the profile within the TOE. The TOE then associates the role
	permissions with the user.
	If a change is required to the security attributes associated with the user/remote IT
	entities, the following rules are applied:
	Remote IT Entity (VPN Peers/VPN Gateways): the security attributes
	(Subject identity/ IKE Security Attributes) can be changed by
	renegotiating a IPSec connection with the remote IT entity or by the
	TOF administrative user undating Remote IT entity profile within the
	TOE:
	<ul> <li>User: there are no 'users' on the TOF. All administrative credentials may</li> </ul>
	be changed only during setup (not when the TOE is operational)
EMT MOE $1(1)$	There is no functionality provided for altering the frequency at which the image
	integrity test is run. It is executed at every relead of the TOF, which is evoluble
	to all administrators
EMT MOE $1(2)$	Cruntographic power up calf tests are mendatory for EIDS 140.2 validation and
$FWI1_WIOF.1(2)$	cryptographic power up sen-tests are manuatory for FIFS 140-2 valuation and
	Administrator may involve aruntegraphic self tests on demand or run these
	Authinistrator may invoke cryptographic sen-tests on demand of run mose
EMT MOE $1(2)$	The TOE provides the shility to enable disable determine and modify the
$FWI1_MOF.1(3)$	The TOE provides the ability to enable, disable, determine, and modify the habevior of the TOE audit review functionality through the provided CLI
	interface. All A dministrators can view audit information
ENT MOE $1(4)$	The TOE granides the chility to each be dischle determine and modify the
$FM1_MOF.1(4)$	The TOE provides the ability to enable, disable, determine, and modify the
	benavior of the TOE security audit analysis benavior (including selecting the
	events that are audited and identifying potential security violations) through the
EMT MOE 1(5)	provided CLI interface. This functionality is infinited to the Security Administrator.
$FM1_MOF.1(5)$	The TOE provides the ability to enable of disable the TOE security alarms
	Consister A during interprovided CL1 Interface. This functionality is finited to the
FM1_MOF.1(6)	The TOE provides the ability to enable of disable the available TOE services for
	functionality is limited to the Security Administrator
EMT MOE $1(7)$	The TOE provides the ability to determine the behavior of the quote control
$FMII_MOF.1(7)$	The TOE provides the ability to determine the behavior of the quota control
	Controlled connection oriented recourse allocation (FDU DSA 1(2)) An
	controlled connection-oriented resource anocation (FKO_KSA.1(2)), An
	identifiers, administrator, specified period of time. This functionality is limited to
	the Security Administrator
EMT MOE $1(8)$	The TOE provides the ability to anable disable determine and modify the
FWI1_MOF.1(8)	The TOE provides the admity to enable, disable, determine and modify the
	the provided CL Linterface. This functionality is limited to the Security
	Administrator. Note: The lockout feature does not apply to a user logging into the
	TOE locally since it does not make sense to lock a local administrator's account
	in this fashion
<b>FMT MSA</b> 1(1)	The TOE provides the ability to manipulate the attributes used to enforce the
	INAUTHENTICATED INFORMATION FLOW SEP and the
	UNAUTHENTICATED TOF SERVICES SEPs through the provided CLI
	interface. This functionality is limited to the Security Administrator
FMT_MSA 1(2)	The TOE provides the ability to manipulate the attributes used to enforce the VPN
1 111 _1110/A.1(2)	SEP through the provided CLI interface. This functionality is limited to the
	Security Administrator
FMT MSA 1(3)	The TOE provides the ability to query modify or delete the attributes used to
1 1111_1110/111(3)	The role provides the dominant to query, mounty, or delete the autobutes used to

TOE SFRs	How the SFR is Met
	provided CLI interface. This functionality is limited to the Security Administrator.
FMT_MSA.3(1)	The default TOE SFP is restrictive for the VPN SFP implemented within the
_ 、 ,	TOE. Information flows must be administratively configured to be allowed. The
	TOE only allows the Security Administrator to specify alternate initial values for
	the attributes used to enforce the SFP.
FMT MSA.3(2)	The default TOE SFP is restrictive for the UNAUTHENTICATED
	INFORMATION FLOW SFP implemented within the TOE. Information flows
	must be administratively configured to be allowed. The TOE only allows the
	Security Administrator to specify alternate initial values for the attributes used to
	enforce the SFP.
FMT MSA 3(3)	The default TOE SEP is restrictive for the UNAUTHENTICATED TOE
1 111_115/1.5(5)	SERVICES SEP implemented within the TOE. With the exception of ICMP
	replies which are allowed by default information flows must be administratively
	configured to be allowed. The TOE only allows the Security Administrator to
	specify alternate initial values for the attributes used to enforce the SEP
<b>FMT MTD 1(1)</b>	The ASP provides the ability to query modify delete and clear all information
1 M1_M1D.1(1)	(avaluding cryptographic data, audit data, and time data) within the TOE this
	includes the perometers associated with the RCP IS IS OSPE PIM and PIP
	routing protocols. This is managed through the provided CL Linterface by the
	Socurity Administrators
EMT MTD 1(2)	The ASD provides the shility to modify the all anymtographic sequeity information
$FWI1_WI1D.1(2)$	within the ASP 1000 TOF. This is menaged through the provided CL Linterface
	This functionality is restricted to the Crumtographic Administrator.
ENT MTD $1(2)$	This functionality is restricted to the Cryptographic Administrator.
$FM1_M1D.1(3)$	The TOE provides the ability to set the time and date within the TOE. This is
	The TOE was it a share bill stranger was the security Administrator.
FM1_M1D.1(4)	The TOE provides the ability to query, modify, delete, and create the all
	information associated with information flow configuration (information flow
	policy rules) within the TOE. All information flow configuration is managed
	through the provided CLI interface. These actions are restricted to the Security
	Administrator.
$FM1_M1D.2(1)$	The TOE maintains counters of the number of "half-open" transport layer
	connections, as well as, the total connection rate through the TOE. when the
	TOEs counters exceed the maximum incomplete sessions (max-incomplete) or the
	maximum high sessions over one minute, the router will reset one old half-open
	connection for every new connection that exceeds the configured max-incomplete
	or one-minute night values (Number of new unestablished sessions that will cause
	the system to start deleting nail-open sessions), until the number of nail-open
	sessions drops below the max-incomplete low values (Number of new
	unestablished sessions that will cause the system to stop detering han-open
	sessions). If the total number of connections exceeds the configured maximum
	the total connections drops below the configured maximum. The functionality
	amplies to both TCD and User Datagram Protocol (UDD) compositions over the
	transport lever Although LIDD is a connectionless protocol, the TOE regards
	LIDD assister with traffic in only and direction as "helf onen " LIDD assister
	with out return to file and likely in lighting of De Continity on attempts to connect
	between two bests where one of the bests has become unresponsive
	The TOE maintains counters of the number of "helf or on" TOP connections of
$FM1_M1D.2(2)$	The TOE maintains counters of the number of "half-open" TCP connections, as
	well as, the total connection rate through the TOE. when the TOEs counters
	kick associate over one minute (and minute kick) (here the ill associate over the maximum
	night sessions over one minute (one-minute high), the router will reset one old
	nan-open connection for every new connection that exceeds the configured max-
	incomplete or one-minute high values, until the number of half-open sessions
	arops below the max-incomplete low values. If the total number of connections

TOE SFRs	How the SFR is Met
	exceeds the configured maximum number of sessions, the TOE does not accept or create any new connections until the total connections drops below the configured maximum. While this functionality is applicable to all connection oriented protocol for which the TOE processes, the TOE only supports TCP connections. For the purpose of this SFR, Connection oriented resources refer to TCP resources.
FMT_MTD.2(3)	<ul> <li>The TOE provides the ability to configure the TOEs ability to handle the event that the storage allocated for audit records become used beyond an acceptable percentage of available space. The TOE allows the Security Administrator to configure how to handle the connections after the quota has been met. The TSF takes one of the following actions when the limit is exceeded: <ul> <li>Terminates all active processes or</li> <li>Overwrites the oldest audit records with the newest records, per administrative configuration</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
FMT_REV.1	<ul> <li>Since TOE does not allow users other than administrators the requirement to revoke users' security attributes is de jure fulfilled. The TOE provides the Security Administrator the ability to revoke the security attributes associated with information flow policies. These permissions can be configured through the TOE provided CLI administrative interface. The following rules are enforced by the TSF with regards to revocations: <ul> <li>changes to the information flow policy ruleset when applied;</li> <li>disabling of a service available to unauthenticated users;</li> <li>changes to the set of security associations with peer TOEs;</li> <li>revocation of the user's role (Security, Crypto, Audit Administrator)</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
FMT_SMF.1	The TOE provides all the capabilities necessary to securely manage the TOE, the services provided by the TOE, and the information flows through the TOE. The management functionality of the TOE is provided through the TOE CLI. The specific management capabilities available from the TOE are identified in the text of FMT_SMF.1.
FMT_SMR.2	<ul> <li>The TOE maintains several administrative roles including, an Audit Administrator, Cryptographic Administrator, Security Administrator. The TOE also supports Authorized IT entities which communicate with the TOE. Users are able to be associated with roles by authenticating to the TOE. Additionally, the following conditions are enforced by the TOE,</li> <li>all roles shall be able to administer the TOE locally;</li> <li>all roles shall be able to administer the TOE remotely;</li> <li>all roles are distinct; that is, there shall be no overlap of operations performed by each role, with the following exceptions:</li> <li>all administrators can review the audit trail; and</li> <li>all administrators can invoke the self-tests with the exception of cryptographic self-tests which can only be invoked by the Cryptographic Administrator. Note that the cryptographic and non-cryptographic self tests are two distinct sets. The cryptographic includes the power-on self tests needed to pass FIPS validations, and the non-cryptographic self- tests includes the image integrity check.</li> </ul>
FPT_FLS.1	Whenever any failure occurs within the TOE that results in the TOE ceasing operation, the TOE securely disables its interfaces to prevent the unintentional flow of any information to or from the TOE. This functionally prevents any failure from causing an unauthorized information flow. There are no failures that circumvent this protection. Note that the Finite State Module that was created and examanined as part of the FIPS validation covers all states and shows that they fail appropriately (closed).

TOE SFRs	How the SFR is Met
FPT_HA_(EXT).1	For TOE configurations that include dual ESPs and RPs, whenever a failure
	occurs within the TSF, the TOE automatically switches over to a hot standby to
	continue operations. This includes any hardware failure within an ESP or RP and
	any software failure.
FPT_ITA.1	The TOE supports multiple routing protocols including, BGP, PIM, IS-IS, OSPF,
	RIP, and MPLS. The TOE meets the availability metrics defined in each of the
	protocols. As long as the TOE is connected to a network, the TOE meets the
	availability metrics specific in each protocol. For each protocol, the availability
	timers defined within the protocol are not exceeded. The specific timers for each
	protocol are identified in the text of the SFR. The TOE fully implements each of
	the supported routing protocols. Each of the suggested protocol metrics are
	enforced by the TOE. The availability parameters for BGP, IS-IS, OSPF, PIM,
	and RIP are configurable by an administrator.
FPT_ITC.1	The TOE provides the ability to create an IPSec tunnel between external IT
	devices (VPN Peers). The communications between the TOE and these IT
	devices are protected from authorized disclosure by the encryption capabilities of
	IPSec. Any traffic sent through or from the TOE through an IPSec connection is
	protected. The traffic is protected whether the TOE itself or the VPN peer creates
	initiates the IPSec connection.
FPT_ITI.1	The TOE provides the ability to create an IPSec tunnel between external IT
	devices (e.g., peer routers). The communications between the TOE and these IT
	devices are protected from authorized modification by the data integrity
	capabilities of IPSec. If the data transmitted through an IPSec tunnel is identified
	as modified, the data is discarded and not used by the IOE. Any traffic sent
	through or from the TOE through an IPSec connection is protected. The traffic is
	protected whether the TOE itself of the VPN peer creates initiates the IPSec
EPT PPO (EVT) 1	The TOE implements several protocols in support of the TOE routing capabilities
	These protocols include PIM_IS_IS_BGP_OSPE_RIP_and MPI S
FPT RCV 1	Whenever the TOF experiences a fault from which it cannot automatically
	recover the TOE enters a safe state that allows the administrators to return the
	TOE to an operational state.
FPT RCV.2	The TOE provides the ability to automatically recover from a single fault in either
_	the active RP/ESP or standby RP/ESP for TOE configurations that include dual
	RPs or ESPs. This includes the ability to handle both hardware and software
	failures. The TOE also provides the ability to automatically recover from a RNG
	stuck condition in which the implemented RNG creates two consecutive identical
	random sequences. All other faults result in the TOE ceasing interface
	transmissions until the fault is addressed by user interaction.
FPT_RPL.1	Attempted replay packets against administrative traffic are detected and then
	discarded. The SSHv2 protocol used for management of the TOE contains a
	mechanism to identify traffic that is corrupted (either because of a replay attack or
	because of a random occurrence). Whenever a packet with a problem is received
	by the TOE, the TOE discards the packet.
	Attempted replay packets against IPSec traffic are detected and then discarded.
	The IPSec protocol used for data plane traffic transmission contains a mechanism
	to identify traffic that is corrupted (either because of a replay attack or because of
	a random occurrence). whenever a packet with a problem is received by the TOE,
EDT STM 1	The TOE inscalas line packet.
111_51WL1	time stamp that is applied to TOE generated audit records
FPT TDC 1	The TOE fully supports the following protocols PIM IS-IS RGP OSPE PID
	and MPLS. When data associated with each of these protocols is received by the
	TOE, the TOE is able to interpret the data.

TOE SFRs	How the SFR is Met
FPT_TST.1(1)	The TOE performs cryptographic self-tests consistent with the requirements of FIPS 140-2. All cryptographic algorithms implemented within the TOE are subject to the applicable self-tests. These tests are performed at start up, by the cryptographic administrator on demand, and periodically, as applicable (whenever an RNG is used or an asymmetric key pair is created) per the FIPS 140-2 requirements. Please see the Security Policy associated with FIPS 140-2 certificate # 1390 for additional information regarding the FIPS self-test implemented by the TOE. This includes the capability to verify the integrity of TSF data and executable code related to cryptography. Further details regarding the FIPS validation can be found in Certificate #1390, Cisco ASR1002 Series Router.
FPT_TST.1(2)	The TOE performs cryptographic self-tests consistent with the requirements of FIPS 140-2. All cryptographic algorithms implemented within the TOE are subject to the applicable self-tests. Please see the Security Policy associated with FIPS 140-2 certificate # 1390 for additional information regarding the FIPS self-test implemented by the TOE. This includes the capability to verify the integrity of TSF data and executable code related to cryptography and key generation. Further details regarding the FIPS validation can be found in Certificate #1390, Cisco ASR1002 Series Router, Cisco ASR1004 Series Router, Cisco ASR1006 Series Router.
FPT_TST_(EXT).1	The TOE performs an integrity verification of the executable code within the TOE. The integrity check is a SHA-1 hash as allowed by the FIPS 140-2 standard. These tests are performed during initial startup of the TOE. The integrity self-tests was verified as part of the FIPS 140-2 validation. Further details regarding the FIPS validation can be found in Certificate #1390, Cisco ASR1002 Series Router, Cisco ASR1004 Series Router, Cisco ASR1006 Series Router. This functionality can be executed by all administrators by issuing a reload of the TOE.
FRU_RSA.1(1)	The TOE provides the ability to limit transport-layer quotas. This functionality allows the TOE to limit the transport-layer traffic available to a specific set of IP addresses over an administrator specified period of time. Specifically, when the configured number of maximum sessions is exceeded, new connections are not accepted /created. When the configured number of maximum incomplete sessions is exceeded, the oldest half-opened sessions are deleted. If there are no half-open sessions, new connections are not accepted/created. And when the configured number of maximum high/low sessions over an administrator configured period of time is exceeded, the oldest half-opened sessions are deleted. If there are no half-open sessions, new connections are not accepted/created.
FRU_RSA.1(2)	The TOE provides the ability to limit controlled connection-oriented resources. This functionality allows the TOE to limit users associated with an administrator- specified network identifier and a set of administrator-specified network identifiers can use over an administrator-specified period of time. Specifically, when the configured number of maximum sessions is exceeded, new connections are not accepted /created. When the configured number of maximum incomplete sessions is exceeded, the oldest half-opened sessions are deleted. If there are no half-open sessions, new connections are not accepted/created. And when the configured number of maximum high/low sessions over an administrator configured period of time is exceeded, the oldest half-opened sessions are deleted. If there are no half-open sessions, new connections are not accepted/created.
FTA_SSL.1	The TOE locks a local administrative session after a configurable amount of idle time. The amount of idle time required to lock a local administrative session is only able to be configured by the Security Administrator. When the local session

<b>TOE SFRs</b>	How the SFR is Met		
	is locked, the screen is flushed and the no further activity is allowed until the		
	administrator re-authenticates to the TOE.		
FTA_SSL.2	The TOE allows the administrators connected to the TOE locally to lock their		
	administrative sessions on demand. When the local session is locked, the screen		
	is flushed and the no further activity is allowed until the administrator re-		
	authenticates to the TOE.		
FTA_SSL.3	The TOE terminates a remote administrative session after a configurable amount		
	of idle time. The amount of idle time required to terminate a remote		
	administrative session is only able to be configured by the Security Administrator.		
FTA_TAB.1	The TOE displays a Security Administrator specified banner on the CLI		
	management interface prior to allowing any administrative access to the TOE.		
FTA_TSE.1	The TOE provides the ability to deny administrative access to the TOE		
	management CLI based on the location (IP address) of the requesting		
	administrator, and the time and day of the connection request.		
FTP_ITC.1(1)	The TOE provides the ability to communicate with remote IT entities (VPN		
	Peers) through an IPSec encryption secured tunnel that is logically distinct from		
	other communication channels and provides assured identification of its end		
	points and protection of the channel data from disclosure. Either the TSF or the		
	authorized IT entity (VPN Peers) to initiate the encrypted session. This prevents		
	the data sent between the TOE and the remote II entity (VPN Peers) from		
	disclosure. The types of information that are sent through the IPSec encrypted		
	tunnel include authentication related data and network control data (PIM, IS-IS, DCD, OSDE, DID, and MDLS). Assumed identification of VDN poors is achieved		
	BOP, OSPF, RIP, and MIPLS.) Assured identification of VPN peers is achieved		
	revegetion for VDN pages is supported via CDL (DEC 2280) and OCSD (DEC		
	2560) When a trustnoint (a CA) is configured both CPL shocks and OCSP		
	revocation checks may be configured to provide certificate revocation		
ETP ITC $1(2)$	The TOE provides the ability to communicate with remote IT entities (VPN		
111_110.1(2)	Peers) through an IPSec encryption secured tunnel. Either the TSE or the		
	authorized IT entity (VPN Peers) to initiate the encrypted session This prevents		
	the data sent between the TOE and the remote IT entity (VPN Peers) from		
	unauthorized/undetected modification. The types of information that are sent		
	through the IPSec encrypted tunnel include authentication related data and		
	network control data (PIM, IS-IS, BGP, OSPF, RIP, and MPLS).		
FTP TRP.1(1)	All remote administrative communications take place over a secure encrypted		
	SSHv2 session. The SSHv2 session is encrypted using AES encryption. The		
	remote users are able to initiate SSHv2 communications with the TOE. The types		
	of information that are sent through the SSHv2 encrypted tunnel include		
	authentication related data and administrative actions.		
FTP_TRP.1(2)	All remote administrative communications take place over secure integrity-		
	verified SSHv2 session. The SSHv2 session is encrypted using AES encryption.		
	The remote users are able to initiate SSHv2 communications with the TOE. The		
	types of information that are sent through the SSHv2 encrypted tunnel include		
	authentication related data and administrative actions.		

### 6.2 TOE Bypass and Interference/Logical Tampering Protection Measures

The ASR consists of a hardware platform in which all operations in the TOE scope are protected from interference and tampering by untrusted subjects. All administration and configuration operations are performed within the physical boundary of the TOE. Also, all TSP enforcement functions must be invoked and succeed prior to functions within the TSC proceeding.

The TOE has been designed so that all locally maintained TSF data can only be manipulated via the secured management interface, a CLI interface. There are no undocumented interfaces for managing the product.

All sub-components included in the TOE (RPs and ESPs) rely on the main ASR 1000 chassis for power, memory management, and access control. In order to access any portion of the TOE, the Identification & Authentication mechanisms of the ASR must be invoked and succeed.

No processes outside of the ASR are allowed direct access to any TOE memory. The TOE only accepts traffic through legitimate TOE interfaces. None of these interfaces provide any access to internal TOE resources.

The ASR provides a private resource space for each VLAN to operate within. Each VLAN has its own forwarding plane resources that other VLANs within the same ASR switch TOE component are not able to affect.

The ASR provides a private resource space for each VRF to operate within. Each VRF has its own resources that other VRFs within the same ASR switch TOE component are not able to affect.

Finally, the ASR enforces information flow control policies and applies network traffic security on its interfaces before traffic passes into or out of the TOE. The TOE controls every ingress and egress traffic flow. Policies are applied to each traffic flow. Traffic flows characterized as unauthorized are discarded and not permitted to circumvent the TOE.

There are no unmediated traffic flows into or out of the TOE. The information flow policies identified in the SFRs are applied to all traffic received and sent by the ASR. Each communication including data plane communication, control plane communications, and administrative communications are mediated by the TOE. There is no opportunity for unaccounted traffic flows to flow into or out of the TOE.

This design, combined with the fact that only an administrative user with the appropriate role may access the TOE security functions, provides a distinct protected domain for the TOE that is logically protected from interference and is not bypassable.

# 7 RATIONALE

This section describes the rationale for the Security Objectives and Security Functional Requirements as defined within this Security Target. Additionally, this section describes the rationale for not satisfying all of the dependencies. The table below illustrates the mapping from Security Objectives to Threats and Policies.

# 7.1 Rationale for TOE Security Objectives

NOTE: The Objectives rationale included in this ST is drawn from the three Medium Robustness Protection Profiles for which conformance is claimed. Similar Objective Rationale or Objective Rationale with the same purpose have been combined where appropriate. The objectives to TOE SFRs mappings have also been updated to reflect the consolidated list of TOE SFRs.

Threat/	Objective	Rationale
Policy		
T.ADDRESS_M ASQUERADE	O.MEDIATE_INFO RMATION_FLOW (AKA O.MEDIATE)	O.MEDIATE (FDP_IFC.1(4), FDP_IFF.1(4), FDP_IFC.1(2), FDP_IFF.1(2)) counters this threat by ensuring that all network packets that flow through the TOE are subject to the information flow policies. One of the rules in each of the policies ensures that the network identifier in a network packet is in the set of network identifiers associated with a TOE's network interface. Therefore, if a user supplied a network identifier in a packet that was associated with a TOE network interface other than the one the user supplied the packet on, the packet would not be allowed to flow through the TOE, or access TOE services. This would, for example, prevent a user from sending a packet from the Internet claiming to be on a machine on the protected enclave.
T.ADMIN_ERR OR	O.ROBUST_ADMI N_GUIDANCE	O. ROBUST_ADMIN_GUIDANCE (ALC_DEL.1, AGD_PRE.1, AGD_OPE.1) help to mitigate this threat by ensuring the TOE administrators have guidance that instructs them how to administer the TOE in a secure manner and to provide the administrator with instructions to ensure the TOE was not corrupted during the delivery process. Having this guidance helps to reduce the mistakes that an administrator might make that could cause the TOE to be configured in a way that is insecure.
	O.ADMIN_ROLE	O.ADMIN_ROLE (FMT_SMR.2) plays a role in mitigating this threat by limiting the functions an administrator can perform in a given role. For example, the Audit Administrator could not make a configuration mistake that would impact the directory access control policy. Likewise, a directory manager could only affect policies in the sub-hierarchy they are responsible for, and not other sub- hierarchies or global directory policies.
	RMATION_FLOW (AKA O.MEDIATE)	FMT_MTD.1(4), FMT_SMF.1) contributes to mitigating this threat by providing administrators the capability to view configuration settings. For example, if the Security Administrator made a mistake when configuring the ruleset, providing them the capability to view the rules affords them the ability to review the rules and discover any

Table 28:	Threat/Policie	s/Objective	s/SFRs Ma	ppings/Rat	ionale
Lable 201	I m cua I onere	Si Objecti e		ppmgs/ met	ionaic

Threat/	Objective	Rationale	
Policy			
		mistakes that might have been made.	
T.ADMIN_ROG UE	O.ADMIN_ROLE	O.ADMIN_ROLE (FMT_SMR.2) mitigates this threat by restricting the functions available to an administrator. This is somewhat different than the part this objective plays in countering T.ADMIN_ERROR, in that this presumes that separate individuals will be assigned separate roles. If the Audit Administrator's intentions become malicious they would not be able to render the TOE unable to enforce its directory access control policy. On the other hand, if the Security Administrator becomes malicious they could affect the directory access control policy, but the Audit Administrator may be able to detect those actions	
TAUDIT	O AUDIT PROTEC	O AUDIT PROTECTION (FAIL SAR 2 FAIL STG 1	
COMPROMISE	O.RESIDUAL_INF ORMATION	<ul> <li>FAU_STG.3, FAU_STG_(EXT).4, FMT_MOF.1(2),</li> <li>FMT_MOF.1(4), FMT_MOF.1(5), FMT_MOF.1(6),</li> <li>FMT_MOF.1(8)) contributes to mitigating this threat by controlling access to the audit trail. No one is allowed to modify audit records, the Audit Administrator is the only one allowed to delete the audit trail. The TOE has the capability to prevent auditable actions from occurring if the audit trail is full, and of notifying an administrator if the audit trail is approaching its capacity. In addition, the TOE has the capability to restore audit data corrupted by the attacker.</li> <li>O.RESIDUAL_INFORMATION (FDP.RIP.2) prevents a user not authorized to read the audit trail from access to audit information that might otherwise be persistent in a TOE resource (e.g., memory). By ensuring the TOE prevents residual information in a resource, audit information will not become available to any user or process except those explicitly authorized for that data.</li> <li>O.SELF_PROTECTION (ADV_ARC.1) contributes to countering</li> </ul>	
T CRYPTO		this threat by ensuring that the TSF can protect itself from users. ADV_ARC.1 provides the security architecture description of the security domains maintained by the TSF that are consistent with the SFRs. Since self-protection is a property of the TSF that is achieved through the design of the TOE and TSF, and enforced by the correct implementation of that design, self-protection will be achieved by that design and implementation.	
COMPROMISE	ORMATION	possibility of malicious users or processes from gaining inappropriate access to cryptographic data, including keys. This objective ensures that the cryptographic data does not reside in a resource that has been used by the cryptographic module and then reallocated to another process. This objective is necessary to mitigate this threat by ensuring no TSF data remain in resources allocated to a user. Even if the security mechanisms do not allow a user to explicitly view TSF data, if TSF data were to inappropriately reside in a resource that was made available to a user, that user would be able to inappropriately view the TSF data.	
	ION	threat by ensuring that the TSF can protect itself from users. ADV_ARC.1 provides the security architecture description of the security domains maintained by the TSF that are consistent with the SFRs. Since self-protection is a property of the TSF that is achieved	

Threat/	Objective	Rationale
Policy	-	
		through the design of the TOE and TSF, and enforced by the correct implementation of that design, self-protection will be achieved by that design and implementation. If the TSF could not maintain and control its domain of execution, it could not be trusted to control access to the resources under its control, which includes the cryptographic data and executable code.
T.MASQUERA	O.ROBUST TOE	O.ROBUST TOE ACCESS (FIA AFL.1, FIA ATD.1(1),
DE	ACCESS	FIA_ATD.1(2), FIA_UID.2, FIA_UAU.1, FIA_UAU.2, FIA_UAU_(EXT).5, FTA_TSE.1, AVA_VAN.3) mitigates this threat by controlling the logical access to the TOE and its resources. By constraining how and when authorized users can access the TOE, and by mandating the type and strength of the authentication mechanism this objective helps mitigate the possibility of a user attempting to login and masquerade as an authorized user. In addition, this objective provides the administrator the means to control the number of failed login attempts a user can generate before an account is locked out, further reducing the possibility of a user gaining unauthorized access to the TOE.
	O.TRUSTED_PAT	O.TRUSTED_PATH (FTP_ITC.1(1), FTP_ITC.1(2)) ensures that the
	Н	communication path end points between the TOE and authorized users (remote administrators, authorized IT entities) are defined. This mechanism allows the TOE to be assured that it is communicating with an authorized user. This also ensures that the transmitted data cannot be compromised or disclosed (e.g., encrypted). The protection offered by this objective is limited to TSE data and security attributes
	O.USER GUIDAN	O.USER GUIDANCE (AGD USR.1) instructs users on the proper
	CE	use of logging into the proxy servers, which plays a role in mitigating the threat of an attacker attempting to masquerade as an authorized user by providing users with the proper guidance on how to securely login to the proxies.
T.FLAWED_DE SIGN	O.CHANGE_MAN AGEMENT	O.CHANGE_MANAGEMENT (ALC_CMC.4, ALC_CMS.4, ALC_DVS.1, ALC_FLR.2, ALC_LCD.1) plays a role in countering this threat by requiring the developer to provide control of the changes made to the TOE's design. This includes controlling physical access to the TOE's development area, and having an automated configuration management system that ensures changes made to the TOE go through an approval process and only those persons that are authorized can make changes to the TOE's design and its documentation.
	O.SOUND_DESIG N	O.SOUND_DESIGN (ADV_FSP_4, ADV_TDS.3, ADV_INT1,) counters this threat, to a degree, by requiring that the TOE be developed using sound engineering principles. By accurately and completely documenting the design of the security mechanisms in the TOE. The design of the TOE can be better understood, which increases the chances that design errors will be discovered.
	O.VULNERABILIT Y_ANALYSIS_ TEST	O.VULNERABILITY_ANALYSIS_TEST (AVA_VAN.3) ensures that the design of the TOE is independently analyzed for design flaws. Having an independent party perform the assessment ensures an objective approach is taken and may find errors in the design that would be left undiscovered by developers that have a preconceived incorrect understanding of the TOE's design.
T.FLAWED_IM	O.CHANGE_MAN	O.CHANGE_MANAGEMENT (ALC_CMC.4, ALC_CMS.4,
PLEMENTATIO	AGEMENT	ALC_DVS.1, ALC_FLR.2, ALC_LCD.1,) This objective plays a role

Threat/	Objective	Rationale	
Policy			
N		in mitigating this threat in the same way that the poor design threat is mitigated. By controlling who has access to the TOE's implementation representation and ensuring that changes to the implementation are analyzed and made in a controlled manner, the threat of intentional or unintentional errors being introduced into the implementation are reduced	
	O SOLIND IMPLE	In addition to documenting the design so that implementers have a	
	MENTATION	thorough understanding of the design so that implementers have a thorough understanding of the design, O.SOUND_IMPLEMENTATION ADV_TDS.3, ADV_INT.1, (ADV_IMP.2, ALC_TAT.1) requires that the developer's tools and techniques for implementing the design are documented. Having accurate and complete documentation, and having the appropriate tools and procedures in the development process helps reduce the likelihood of unintentional errors being introduced into the implementation.	
	O.THOROUGH_FU	Although the previous three objectives help minimize the	
	NCTIONAL_TESTI NG	introduction of errors into the implementation, O.THOROUGH_FUNCTIONAL_TESTING (ATE_COV.2, ATE_FUN.1, ATE_DPT.1, ATE_IND.2) increases the likelihood that any errors that do exist in the implementation (with respect to the functional specification, high level, and low-level design) will be discovered through testing.	
	O.VULNERABILIT	O.VULNERABILITY_ANALYSIS_TEST (AVA_VAN.3) helps	
	Y_ANALYSIS_ TEST	reduce errors in the implementation that may not be discovered during functional testing. Ambiguous design documentation, and the fact that exhaustive testing of the external interfaces is not required may leave bugs in the implementation undiscovered in functional testing. Having an independent party perform a vulnerability analysis and conduct testing outside the scope of functional testing increases the likelihood of finding errors.	
T.POOR_TEST	O.CORRECT_	While these testing activities are a necessary activity for successful	
	TSF_OPERATION	completion of an evaluation, this testing activity does not address the concern that the TOE continues to operate correctly and enforce its security policies once it has been fielded. Some level of testing must be available to end users to ensure the TOE's security mechanisms continue to operate correctly once the TOE is fielded O.CORRECT_TSF_OPERATION (FPT_TST_(EXT).1, Crypto Self-Test (FPT_TST.1(1), and ) Key Generation Self-Test (FPT_TST.1(2)) ensures that once the TOE is installed at a customer's location, the capability exists that the integrity of the TSF (hardware and software) can be demonstrated, and thus providing end users the confidence that the TOE's security policies continue to be enforced.	
	O.THOROUGH_FU NCTIONAL_TESTI NG	Design analysis determines that TOE's documented design satisfies the security functional requirements. In order to ensure the TOE's design is correctly realized in its implementation, the appropriate level of functional testing of the TOE's security mechanisms must be performed during the evaluation of the TOE. O.THOROUGH_FUNCTIONAL_TESTING (ATE_FUN.1, ATE_COV.2, ATE_DPT.1, ATE_IND.2) ensures that adequate functional testing is performed to ensure the TSF satisfies the security functional requirements and demonstrates that the TOE's security mechanisms operate as documented. While functional testing serves an important purpose, it does not ensure the TSFI cannot be used in	

Threat/	Objective	Rationale
Policy	-	
	O.VULNERABILIT Y_ANALYSIS_ TEST	unintended ways to circumvent the TOE's security policies. O.VULNERABILITY_ANALYSIS_TEST (AVA_VAN.3) addresses this concern by requiring a vulnerability analysis be performed in conjunction with testing that goes beyond functional testing. This objective provides a measure of confidence that the TOE does not contain security flaws that may not be identified through functional testing.
T.REPLAY	O.REPLAY_DETE CTION	O.REPLAY_DETECTION (FPT_RPL.1) prevents a user from replaying TSF data and security attributes (e.g., TSF data or security attributes transmitted between a remote administrator, the authentication server, an authorized IT entity and the TOE) that could leave the TOE in a configuration that the administrative staff did not intend (e.g., an administrator modifies the auditable events to be recorded and a user captures that traffic. At a later date the administrator determines that the new set of auditable events is not sufficient and again modifies the events to be audited. The user then replays the earlier audit event configuration.) O.REPLAY_DETECTION (FPT_RPL.1) prevents a user from replaying authentication data. Prevention of replay of authentication data will counter the threat that a user will be able to record an authentication session between a trusted entity (administrative user or trusted IT entity) and then replay it to gain access to the TOE, and counter the ability of a user to act as another user.
	O.ROBUST_TOE_ ACCESS	O.ROBUST_TOE_ACCESS (FIA_UAU_(EXT).5) contributes to countering this threat by requiring the TOE have the capability to invoke a single-use authentication mechanism. A single-use authentication mechanism ensures that once authentication data has been presented to authenticate a user, that authentication data cannot be used again, therefore a user could not capture authentication and reuse it at a later time.
T.RESIDUAL_D ATA	O.RESIDUAL_INF ORMATION	O.RESIDUAL_INFORMATION (FDP_RIP.2, FCS_CKM.4) counters this threat by ensuring that TSF data and user data is not persistent when resources are released by one user/process and allocated to another user/process. This means that network packets sent in response to a request will not have residual data from another packet (potentially from another user) due to the padding of a packet. The TSF data will be zeroized once the resources are released by a user/process. This also ensures that memory that is made available to proxy users will not contain residual data.
T.RESOURCE_ EXHAUSTION	O.RESOURCE_SH ARING	O.RESOURCE_SHARING (FRU_RSA.1(1), FRU_RSA.1(2), FMT_MTD.2(1), FMT_MTD.2(2), FMT_MTD.2(3), FMT_MOF.1(7), FMT_SMF.1) mitigates this threat by requiring the TOE to provide controls over connection-oriented resources. These controls provide the administrator ability to specify which network identifiers have access to the TOE's connection-oriented resources over a time period that is specified by the administrator. This objective also addresses the denial-of-service attack of a user attempting to exhaust the connection-oriented resources by generating a large number of half-open connections (e.g., SYN attack).
T.SPOOFING	O.TRUSTED_PAT H	It is possible for an entity other than the TOE (a subject on the TOE, or another IT entity) to provide an environment that may lead a user to mistakenly believe they are interacting with the TOE thereby

Threat/	Objective	Rationale
Policy		
		fooling the user into divulging identification and authentication information. O.TRUSTED_PATH (FTP_ITC.1(1), FTP_ITC.1(2), FTP_TRP.1(1), FTP_TRP.1(2)) mitigates this threat by ensuring users have the capability to ensure they are communicating with the TOE when providing identification and authentication data to the TOE.
T.MALICIOUS_	O.DISPLAY_BAN	O.DISPLAY_BANNER (FTA_TAB.1) helps mitigate this threat by
TSF_COMPRO MISE	NER	providing the Security Administrator the ability to remove product information (e.g., product name, version number) from a banner that is displayed to users. Having product information about the TOE provides an attacker with information that may increase their ability to compromise the TOE.
	O.MANAGE_INFO	O.MANAGE (FMT_MTD.1(1)-(4), FMT_MSA.1(1),
	RMATION_FLOW	FMT_MSA.1(2), FMT_MSA.1(3), FMT_MSA.3(1) - (3),
	(AKA O.MANAGE)	FMT_MOF.1(1)-(8)) is necessary because an access control policy is not specified to control access to TSF data. This objective is used to dictate who is able to view and modify TSF data, as well as the
		behavior of TSF functions. This objective provides the capability to
		Satisfaction of this objective (and its associated requirements)
		prevents unauthorized access to TSF functions and data through the
		administrative mechanisms.
	O.RESIDUAL_INF	O.RESIDUAL_INFORMATION (FDP_RIP.2, FCS_CKM.4) is
	ORMATION	necessary to mitigate this threat, because even if the security
		dete were to inapproprietally reside in a resource that was made
		available to a user, that user would be able to inappropriately view
		the TSF data.
	O.SELF_PROTECT	O.SELF_PROTECTION (ADV_ARC.1, FTP_TRP.1, FTP_ITC.1)
	ION	requires that the TSF be able to protect itself from tampering and that
		the security mechanisms in the TSF cannot be bypassed. Without this
		objective, there could be no assurance that users could not view or modify TSE data or TSE executables. This objective contributes to
		countering this threat by ensuring that the TSF can protect itself from
		users. ADV_ARC.1 provides the security architecture description of
		the security domains maintained by the TSF that are consistent with
		the SFRs. Since self-protection is a property of the TSF that is
		achieved through the design of the TOE and TSF, and enforced by
		the correct implementation of that design, self-protection will be achieved by that design and implementation (ADV, APC 1) requires
		that the TSF be able to protect itself from tampering and that the
		security mechanisms in the TSF cannot be bypassed. Without this
		objective, there could be no assurance that users could not view or
		modify TSF data or TSF executables.
	O.TRUSTED_PAT	O.TRUSTED_PATH (FTP_TRP.1(1), FTP_TRP.1(2),
	Н	FIP_IIC.1(1), FIP_IIC.1(2)) plays a role in addressing this threat by ensuring that a trusted communication path axists between the
		TOE and authorized users (i.e., remote administrators, authorized IT
		entities). This ensures the transmitted data cannot be compromised or
		disclosed (e.g., encrypted) during the duration of the trusted path. The
		protection offered by this objective is limited to TSF data, including
		authentication data and all data sent or received by trusted IT entities
		(a relying party's user data is not protected; only the authentication

Threat/	Objective	Rationale
Policy		
		portion of the session is protected), and security attributes (e.g., the data communication between peer TOEs via a VPN is protected by the VPN policy stated in FDP_IFC.1(1) and FDP_IFF.1(1) and FTP_ITC does not apply to VPN communications) and (e.g., proxy user's user data is not protected, since their entire session communication (only the authentication portion of the session is protected) does not require encryption or any other form of protection).
T.UNATTENDE	O.ROBUST_TOE_	O.ROBUST_TOE_ACCESS (FTA_SSL.1, FTA_SSL.2,
D_SESSION	ACCESS	FTA_SSL.3) helps to mitigate this threat by including mechanisms that place controls on user's sessions. Local administrator's sessions are locked and remote sessions are dropped after a Security Administrator defined time period of inactivity. Locking the local administrator's session reduces the opportunity of someone gaining unauthorized access the session when the console is unattended. Dropping the connection of a remote session (after the specified time period) reduces the risk of someone accessing the remote machine where the session was established, thus gaining unauthorized access to the access
TUNAUTHORI	O MEDIATE	to the session. O MEDIATE (EDP IEE 1(4) EDP IEC 1(4) EMT REV 1
ZED_ACCESS		ADV_ARC.1, FDP_IFC.1(2), FDP_IFF.1(2)) works to mitigate this threat by ensuring that all network packets that flow through the TOE are subject to the information flow policies. One of the rules ensures that the network identifier in a packet is in the set of network identifiers associated with a TOE's network interface. Therefore, if a user supplied a network identifier in a packet that purported to originate from a network associated with a TOE network interface other than the one the user supplied the packet on, the packet would not be allowed to flow through the TOE, or access TOE services. Another rule provides further granularity of access control by enabling the administrator to control the source and destination address, destination port, protocol, and application level commands. By implementing this level of access control an attacker would not be allowed access to other hosts and applications residing on the protected network. Additionally, the TOE maintains "state" information of all approved connections. This function ensures that each packet arriving at a TOE interface purporting to be part of an approved connection through or to the TOE, is checked against a current and valid list of connection parameters (e.g. for a TCP/IP connection; source and destination address, ports, SYN and ACK numbers, flags, etc.) prior to allowing the packet through or to the TOE. The VPN policy ensures that user data being sent between PEER TOEs is encrypted if there is a rule (specified by the Security Administrator) that states data is to be encrypted between those two hosts. The VPN policy allows the administrator to specify for each originating host (identified by IP address), which destination addresses must be accessed through a VPN (using ESP tunnel mode) and which destination addresses may be accessed without VPN encryption. If a potential security violation has been detected, the TOE displays a message that identifies the potential security violation to all administrative consoles. The consoles include the loc
Threat/ Policy	Objective	Rationale
-------------------------	---------------------------	--
	O.USER_GUIDAN CE	administrator is not currently accessing the TOE, the message is stored and immediately displayed the next time an administrator accesses the TOE. The authenticated TOE policy allows the administrator to specify each originating host (identified by IP address), which destination addresses must be accessed without encryption. If a potential security violation has been detected, the TOE displays a message that identifies the potential security violation to all administrator consoles. The consoles include the local TOE console and any active remote administrative sessions. If an administrator is not currently accessing the TOE, the message is stored and immediately displayed the next time an administrator accesses the TOE. The TOE requires successful authentication through a protected communication path (with account lock-out capability) to the TOE prior to gaining access to certain services on or mediated by the TOE. By implementing strong authentication to gain access to these services, an attacker's opportunity to successfully conduct a man-in- the-middle and/or password guessing attack is greatly reduced. Lastly, the TSF must ensure that all configured enforcement functions (authentication, access control rules, etc.) must be invoked prior to allowing a user to gain access to TOE or TOE mediated services. The TOE restricts the ability to modify the security attributes associated with access control rules, access to authenticated and unauthenticated services, etc., to the Security Administrator. This feature ensures that no other user can modify the information flow policy to bypass the intended TOE security policy. ADV_ARC.1 provides the security architecture description of the security domains maintained by the TSF that are consistent with the SFRs. Since self- protection is a property of the TSF that is achieved through the design of the TOE and TSF, and enforced by the correct implementation of that design, self-protection will be achieved by that design and implementation. O.USER_GUIDANCE (AGD_USR.1) mitig
T.UNAUTHORI ZED_PEER	O.PEER_AUTHEN TICATION	O.PEER_AUTHENTICATION (FCS_IKE_(EXT).1) mitigates this threat by requiring that the TOE implement the Internet Key Exchange protocol, as specified in RFC2409, to establish a secure, authenticated channel between the TOE and another remote VPN endpoint before establishing a security association with that remote endpoint or another remote router before establishing a security association with that router. O.PEER_AUTHENTICATION (FCS_FDOI_(EXT).1 mitigates this threat by requiring that the TOE implement the GDOI protocol, as specified in RFC 3547, as an extension to RFC2409. This protocol is used to establish security associations between groups of IPSec users.

Threat/	Objective	Rationale
Policy	-	
T.UNIDENTIFI ED_ACTIONS	O.AUDIT_REVIE W	O.AUDIT_REVIEW (FAU_SAA.1, FAU_ARP.1, FAU_SAR.1, FAU_SAR.3, FAU_ARP_ACK.1) helps to mitigate this threat by providing the Security Administrator with a required minimum set of configurable audit events that could indicate a potential security violation. By configuring these auditable events, the TOE monitors the occurrences of these events (e.g. set number of authentication failures, set number of information policy flow failures, self-test failures, etc.) and immediately notifies all TOE administrators once an event has occurred or a set threshold has been met. If a potential security violation has been detected, the TOE displays a message that identifies the potential security violation to all administrative consoles. The consoles include the local TOE console and any active remote administrative sessions. If an administrator is not currently logged into the TOE, the message is stored and immediately displayed the next time an administrator accesses the TOE. This message is displayed to all administrative roles and will remain on the screen for each administrative role until each administrative role acknowledges the message. In addition to displaying the potential security violation, the message must contain all audit records that generated the potential security violation. The TOE can also be configured to generate an audible alarm, which may alert administrators who are not sitting at their administrative workstation or console. The TOE also requires an Audit Administrator to view pertinent audit information. For analyzing the audit trail for maintenance purposes. A search and sort capability provides an efficient mechanism for the Audit Administrator to view pertinent audit information. For analyzing the audit trail, the TOE requires an Auditor role. This role is restricted to Audit record review and the deletion of the audit trail for maintenance purposes. A search and sort capability provides an efficient mechanism for the Audit Administrator to view pertinent audit information. In addition to the local
		failures, self-test)
T.UNKNOWN_ STATE	O.MAINT_MODE	O.ROBUST_ADMIN_GUIDANCE (AGD_OPE.1, AGD_PRE.1) provides administrative guidance for the secure start-up of the TOE as well as guidance to configure and administer the TOE securely. This guidance provides administrators with the information necessary to ensure that the TOE is started and initialized in a secure manner. The guidance also provides information about the corrective measure necessary when a failure occurs (i.e., how to bring the TOE back into a secure state).

Threat/	Objective	Rationale	
Policy	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,		
		O.MAINT_MODE (FPT_RCV.1, FPT_RCV.2) helps to mitigate this threat by ensuring that the TOE does not continue to operate in an insecure state when a hardware or software failure occurs. After a failure, the TOE enters a state that disallows operations and requires an administrator to follow documented procedures to return the TOE to a secure state	
	O.SOUND_DESIG N	O.CORRECT_TSF_OPERATION (FPT_TST_(EXT).1, Crypto Self- Test (FPT_TST.1(1), and ) Key Generation Self-Test (FPT_TST.1(2)), counters this threat by ensuring that the TSF runs a suite of tests to successfully demonstrates the correct operation of the TSF's underlying abstract machine (hardware and software), the TSF, and the TSF's cryptographic components at initial startup of the TOE. In addition to ensuring that the TOE's security state can be verified, the Security Administrator can verify the integrity of the TSF's data and stored code as well as the TSF's cryptographic data and stored code. O.SOUND_DESIGN (ADV_ARC.1) works to mitigate this threat by requiring that the TOE developers provide accurate and complete design documentation of the security mechanisms in the TOE, including a security model. By providing this documentation, the possible secure states of the TOE are described, thus enabling the administrator to return the TOE to one of these states during the	
	O.ROBUST_ADMI N_GUIDANCE	O.MAINT_MODE (FPT_RCV.1, FPT_RCV.2) helps to mitigate this threat by ensuring that the TOE does not continue to operate in an insecure state when a hardware or software failure occurs. After a failure, the TOE enters a state that disallows traffic flow and requires an administrator to follow documented procedures to return the TOE to a secure state. This objective provides administrative guidance for the secure start- up of the TOE and guidance to configure and administer the TOE securely. This guidance provides administrators with the information necessary to ensure that the TOE is started and initialized in a secure manor. The guidance also provides information about the corrective measure necessary when a failure occurs (i.e., how to bring the TOE back into a secure state).	
	O.CORRECT_ TSF_OPERATION	O.SOUND_DESIGN (ADV_FSP.4, ADV_TDS.3) works to mitigate this threat by requiring that the TOE developers provide accurate and complete design documentation of the security mechanisms in the TOE. By providing this documentation, the possible security states of the TOE at startup or restart after failure should be documented and understood, thereby reducing the possibility that the TOE's security state could be unknown to users of the TOE.	
		This objective counters this threat by ensuring that the TSF runs a suite of tests to successfully demonstrate the correct operation of the TSF (hardware and software) and the TSF's cryptographic components at initial startup of the TOE. In addition to ensuring that the TOE's security state can be verified, an administrator can verify the integrity of the TSF's data and stored code and the TSF's cryptographic data and stored code using the TOE-provided cryptographic mechanisms.	
T.EAVESDROP	O.CRYPTOGRAPH IC_FUNCTIONS	O.CRYPTOGRAPHIC_FUNCTIONS (FCS_CKM.1(1), FCS_CKM.1(2), FCS_CKM.2, FCS_CKM_(EXT).2, FCS_CKM.4,	

Threat/	Objective	Rationale
Policy	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
		FCS_COP.1(1), FCS_COP.1(2), FCS_COP.1(3), FCS_COP.1(4), FCS_COP_(EXT).1 mitigates this threat by providing for the use of cryptographic functions to detect when information has been modified.
	O.PROTECT_IN_T PANSIT	O.PROTECT_IN_TRANSIT (FPT_ITA.1, FPT_ITC.1, FPT_ITI.1, FTP_TPP_1(1)_FTP_TPP_1(2)_FTP_ITC_1(1)_FTP_ITC_1(2)
	KAN511	satisfies this threat by ensuring protection of the communication
		between the TOE and trusted IT entities while transmitting data.
T.NORECOVER	O.HA	O.HA (FPT_HA_(EXT).1) counters this threat by ensuring that any
Y		single failure within the TSF does not prevent TSF performance.
P.ACCESS_BA	O.DISPLAY_BAN	O.DISPLAY_BANNER (FTA_TAB.1) satisfies this policy by
NNER	NER	ensuring that the TOE displays a Security Administrator configurable
		banner that provides all users with a warning about the unauthorized
		administrative session
P ACCOUNTAB	O AUDIT GENER	O AUDIT GENERATION (FAU GEN 1 FAU GEN 2
ILITY	ATION	FIA USB.1. FAU SEL.1) addresses this policy by providing the
		Security Administrator with the capability of configuring the audit
		mechanism to record the actions of a specific user, or review the audit
		trail based on the identity of the user. Additionally, the
		administrator's ID is recorded when any security relevant change is
		made to the TOE (e.g. access rule modification, start-stop of the audit
		mechanism, establishment of a trusted channel, etc.). Attributes used
		in the audit record generation process are also required to be bound to
		the subject, ensuring users are held accountable.
		U.AUDII_GENERATION (FAU_GEN.I, FAU_GEN.2, FIA_USP_1_FAU_SFI_1) addresses this policy by providing an audit
		mechanism to record the actions of a specific user and the capability
		for an administrator to "pre-select" audit events based on the user ID
		The audit event selection function is configurable during run-time to
		ensure the TOE is able to capture security-relevant events given
		changes in threat conditions.
	O.ROBUST_TOE_	O.ROBUST_TOE_ACCESS (FIA_UID.2, FIA_UAU_(EXT).5,
	ACCESS	FIA_UAU.2) supports this policy by requiring the TOE to identify
		and authenticate all authorized users prior to allowing any TOE
		access or any TOE mediated access on behalf of those users. While
		authenticated this PP allows unauthenticated users to access the TOF
		and the identity is then a presumed network identifier (e.g. $IP$
		address).
	O.TIME_STAMPS	O.TIME_STAMPS (FPT_STM.1, FMT_MTD.1(3)) plays a role in
		supporting this policy by requiring the TOE to provide a reliable time
		stamp (configured locally by the Security Administrator). The audit
		mechanism is required to include the current date and time in each
		audit record. All audit records that include the user ID, will also
	O ADMIN DOLE	ADMIN POLE (EMT SMP 2) supports this policy by requiring
F.ADWIIN_ACC	O.ADMIN_KULE	the TOE to provide mechanisms (e.g. local authentication remote
100		authentication means to configure and manage the TOF both
		remotely and locally) that allow remote and local administration of
		the TOE. This is not to say that everything that can be done by a local
		administrator must also be provided to the remote administrator. In
		fact, it may be desirable to have some functionality restricted to the

Threat/	Objective	Rationale
Policy	Ů	
V		local administrator (e.g., setting the ruleset).
	O.TRUSTED PAT	O.TRUSTED PATH (FTP TRP.1(1), FTP TRP.1(2),
	Н	FTP ITC.1(1), FTP ITC.1(2)) satisfies this policy by requiring that
		each remote administrative session (all administrative roles) is
		authenticated and conducted via a secure channel. Additionally, all
		authorized IT entities (e.g. authentication/certificate servers) must
		adhere to the same requirements as the remote administrator.
		Additionally, all trusted IT entities (e.g., trusted peer directories,
		intrusion detection systems) connect through a protected channel,
		thus avoiding disclosure and spoofing problems.
P.CRYPTOGRA	O.CRYPTOGRAPH	O.CRYPTOGRAPHIC_FUNCTIONS (FCS_CKM.1(1),
PHY	IC_FUNCTIONS	FCS_CKM.1(2), FCS_CKM.2, FCS_CKM.4, FCS_CKM_(EXT).2,
		FCS_COP.1(1), FCS_COP.1(2), FCS_COP.1(3), FCS_COP.1(4),
		FCS_COP.1(5)) FCS_COP_(EXT).1 implements this policy,
		requiring a combination of FIPS-validation and non-FIPS-validated
		cryptographic mechanisms that are used to provide
		encryption/decryption services, and digital signature functions.
		Functions include symmetric encryption and decryption, digital
		signatures, and key generation and establishment functions.
	O.RESIDUAL_INF	O.RESIDUAL_INFORMATION (FDP_RIP.2, FCS_CKM.4)
	ORMATION	satisfies this policy by ensuring that cryptographic data are cleared
		from resources that are shared between users. Keys must be zeroized
		according to FIPS 140-2.
P.CRYPTOGRA	O.CRYPTOGRAPH	O.CRYPTOGRAPHIC_FUNCTIONS (FCS_BCM_(EXT)).1
PHIC_FUNCTI	IC_FUNCTIONS	implements this policy, requiring a combination of FIPS-validation
ONS		and non-FIPS-validated cryptographic mechanisms that are used to
		provide encryption/decryption services, as well as digital signature
		functions. Functions include symmetric encryption and decryption,
		digital signatures, as well as key generation and establishment
		functions.
P.CRYPTOGRA	O.CRYPTOGRAPH	O.CRYPTOGRAPHY_VALIDATED (FCS_BCM_(EXT)) satisfies
PHY_VALIDAT	Y_VALIDATED	this policy by requiring the TOE to implement NIST FIPS validated
ED		cryptographic services. These services will provide confidentiality
		and integrity protection of TSF data while in transit to remote parts of
		the TOE.
	O.RESIDUAL_INF	O.RESIDUAL_INFORMATION (FDP_RIP.2, FCS_CKM.4)
	ORMATION	satisfies this policy by ensuring that cryptographic data are cleared
		from resources that are shared between users. Keys must be zeroized
		according to FIPS 140-2.
P.VULNERABI	O.VULNERABILIT	O.VULNERABILITY_ANALYSIS_TEST (AVA_VAN.3) satisfies
	Y_ANALYSIS_	this policy by ensuring that an independent analysis is performed on
ANALYSIS_IE	IESI	the IOE and penetration testing based on that analysis is performed.
51		Having an independent party perform the analysis nelps ensure
		objectivity and eliminates preconceived notions of the TOE's design
		and implementation that may otherwise affect the thoroughness of the
		analysis. The level of analysis and testing requires that an attacker
		with a moderate attack potential cannot compromise the TOE's
		admity to enforce its security policies.
P.COMPATIBIL	U.PRUTUCULS	U.PKUIUUULS (FPI_FLS.1, FPI_PKU_(EXI).1, FPI_IDU.1)
111		satisfies this policy by requiring that standardized protocols are
		TOEs therefore not compromising the gapping state of the most of
DINTECTIV	O INTEODITY	O INTECRITY (EDD IEC 1(1) EDD IEE 1(1)) and for the router.
F.INTEGKITY	U.INTEGKITY	U.INTEGRITY (FUP IFC.1(1), FUP IFF.1(1)) Satisfies this policy

Threat/ Policy	Objective	Rationale
		by ensuring that all IPSec encrypted data received from a peer TOE is properly decrypted and authentication verified.

## 7.2 Rationale for the Security Objectives for the Environment

Assumption	Environmental	Rationale
	<b>Objective Addressing</b>	
	the Assumption	
A.AVAILABILI	OE.AVAILABILITY	Network resources shall be available to allow clients to
TY		satisfy mission requirements and to transmit information.
A.NO_GENER	OE.NO_GENERAL_PURPO	The Router must not include any general-purpose commuting
AL_PURPOSE	SE	or storage capabilities. This will protect the TSF data from
		malicious processes.
A.PHYSICAL	OE.PHYSICAL	The TOE, the TSF data, and protected user data is assumed to
		be protected from physical attack (e.g., theft, modification,
		destruction, or eavesdropping). Physical attack could include
		unauthorized intruders into the TOE environment, but it does
		not include physical destructive actions that might be taken
		by an individual that is authorized to access the TOE
		environment.
A.NO_TOE_BY	OE.NO_TOE_BYPASS	The Router must be placed in a position on the network so
PASS		that information cannot flow between external and internal
		networks located in different enclaves without passing
		through the TOE.

 Table 29: Assumptions/Objectives Mappings/Rationale

## 7.3 Rationale for SFRs-SARs/TOE Objectives

This section provides rationale for the Security Functional Requirements/Security Assurance Requirements demonstrating that the Security Functional Requirements/Security Assurance Requirements are suitable to address the security objectives. This section provides mapping rational between each of the identified Security Functional Requirements/Security Assurance Requirements and the mapped TOE security objectives.

Table 30:	Objective	to SFR	Mappings
-----------	-----------	--------	----------

Objective	Req.	Rationale
O.ADMIN_ROLE	FMT_SMR.2	FMT_SMR.2 requires that three roles exist for administrative actions:
		the Security Administrator, who is responsible for configuring most
		security-relevant parameters on the TOE; the Cryptographic
		Administrator, who is responsible for managing the security data that
		is critical to the cryptographic operations; and the Audit
		Administrator, who is responsible for reading and deleting the audit
		trail. The TSF is able to associate a human user with one or more
		roles and these roles isolate administrative functions in that the
		functions of these roles do not overlap. It is true that the design of
		some systems could enable a rogue security administrator to
		manipulate cryptographic data by, for instance, writing directly to
		kernel memory. While this scenario is a security concern, this

		objective does not counter that aspect of T.ADMIN_ROGUE. If a
		security administrator were to perform such an action, the auditing
		requirements (along with the audit trail protection requirements)
		afford some measure of detectability of the rogue administrator's
		actions.
O.AUDIT_GENERAT	FAU_GEN.1	FAU_GEN.1-NIAP-0429 defines the set of events that the TOE must
ION		be capable of recording. This requirement ensures that an
		administrator has the ability to audit any security relevant event that
		takes place in the TOE. This requirement also defines the information
		that must be contained in the audit record for each auditable event.
		There is a minimum of information that must be present in every
		audit record and this requirement defines that, and the additional
		information that must be recorded for each auditable event. This
		requirement also places a requirement on the level of detail that is
		recorded on any additional security functional requirements an ST
		author adds to this PP.
	FAU GEN.2	FAU GEN.2-NIAP-0410 ensures that the audit records associate a
		user identity with the auditable event. Although the FIA ATD.1
		requirements mandate that a "userid" be used to represent a user
		identity, the TOE developer is able to associate different types of
		user-ids with different users in order to meet this objective.
	FIA USB.1	FIA USB.1 plays a role is satisfying this objective by requiring a
	_	binding of security attributes associated with users that are
		authenticated with the subjects that represent them in the TOE. This
		only applies to authenticated users, since the identity of
		unauthenticated users cannot be confirmed. Therefore, the audit trail
		may not always have the proper identity of the subject that causes an
		audit record to be generated.
	FAU SEL.1	FAU SEL.1-NIAP-0407 allows the selected administrator(s) to
	_	configure which auditable events will be recorded in the audit trail.
		This provides the administrator with the flexibility in recording only
		those events that are deemed necessary by site policy, thus reducing
		the amount of resources consumed by the audit mechanism and
		providing the ability to focus on the actions of an individual user. In
		addition, the requirement has been refined to require that the audit
		event selection function is configurable during run-time to ensure the
		TOE is able to capture security-relevant events given changes in
		threat conditions.
O.AUDIT_PROTECT	FMT_MOF.1(	FMT_MOF.1 restricts the ability to control the behavior of the audit
ION	3)	and alarm mechanism to the administrators of the ASR. The Security
	FAU_SAR.2	Administrator is the only user that controls the behavior of the events
	FAU_STG.1	that generate alarms and whether the alarm mechanism is enabled or
	FAU_STG.3	disabled.
	FAU_STG_(E	FAU_SAR.2 restricts the ability to read the audit trail to the
	XT).4	administrative users of the ASR, thus preventing the disclosure of the
	FMT_SMF.1	audit data to any other user. However, the TOE is not expected to
	FMT_MOF.1(	prevent the disclosure of audit data if it has been archived or saved in
	2)	another form (e.g., moved or copied to an ordinary file).
	FMT_MOF.1(	The FAU_STG family dictates how the audit trail is protected.
	4)	FAU_STG_(EXT).4 restricts the ability to delete audit records to the
	FMT_MOF.1(	Audit Administrator; or if the option of overwriting old audit records
	5)	is chosen by the Administrator in FAU_STG_(EXT).4, the audit data
	FMT_MOF.1(	may be deleted/overwritten. Since the Audit Administrator is trusted
	6)	to review the audit data, the threat being countered is that the
	FMT_MOF.1(	administrator does something malicious and then attempts to conceal

	8)	it by configuring the audit log to overwrite old records. Presumably
	-)	the administrator would then attempt to fill up the audit log in order
		to overwrite the thing they just did, and the fact that they reconfigured
		the audit log overwrite action. The Audit Administrator would
		the addit log over while action. The Addit Administrator would
		noperuny notice this activity and detect the fact that the administrator
		was performing illicit activities. The fact that the administrator does
		not directly have the ability to delete the audit records helps ensure
		that audit records are kept until the Audit Administrator deems they
		are no longer necessary. FAU_STG_(EXT).4 also ensures that no one
		has the ability to modify audit records (e.g., edit any of the
		information contained in an audit record). This ensures the integrity
		of the audit trail is maintained.
		FAU STG.3 requires that the administrators be alerted when the
		audit trail exceeds a capacity threshold established by the Security
		Administrator. In addition, an audit record is cut which will trigger
		the analysis performed in EAU SAA, resulting in an EAU ADD
		alorm being issued. This answers that an administrator has the
		afarm being issued. This ensures that an administrator has the
		opportunity to manage the audit trail before it becomes full and the
		avoiding the possible loss of audit data.
		FAU_STG_(EXT).4 allows the Security Administrator to configure
		the TOE so that if the audit trail does become full, either the TOE will
		prevent any events from occurring (other than actions taken by the
		administrator) that would generate an audit record or the audit
		mechanism will overwrite the oldest audit records with new records.
		FMT_SMF.1 requires the TOE to provide an administrator with a
		facility to backup, recover and archive audit data ensuring the ability
		to recover corrupted audit records, and access to a complete history of
		audit information.
O.AUDIT REVIEW	FAU ARP.1	FAU SAA.1-NIAP-0407 defines the events (or rules) that indicate a
	FAU ARP A	potential security violation and will generate an alarm. The triggers
	CK (EXT).1	for these events are largely configurable by the Security
	FALL SAA 1	Administrator Some rules are not configurable or configurable by
	FAU SAR 1	the cryptographic administrator
	FALL SAR 3	EAU APP 1 requires that the alarm be displayed at the local
	TAU_SAK.5	AC_ART. I requires that the armste administration across la(a)
		administrative console and at the remote administrative console(s)
		when auditor and security administrative session(s) exists. For alarms
		at remote consoles, the alarm is sent either during an established
		session or upon session establishment (as long as the alarm has not
		been acknowledged). This is required to increase the likelihood that
		the alarm will be received as soon as possible. This requirement also
		dictates the information that must be displayed with the alarm. The
		potential security violation is identified in the alarm, as are the
		contents of the audit records of the events that accumulated and
		triggered the alarm. The information in the audit records is necessary;
		it allows the administrators to react to the potential security violation
		without having to search through the audit trail looking for the related
		events.
		FAU ARP ACK (EXT) 1 requires that an alarm generated by the
		mechanism that implements the FAU ARP requirement be
		maintained until an administrator acknowledges it. This ensures that
		the alarm message will not be obstructed and the administrators will
		the alartad of a potential acquity violation. Additionally, this requires
		that the asknowledgement he transmitted to see that requires
		alown thus answing that that sat of a lowing that the sate of
		aranin, thus ensuring that that set of administrators knows that the user
		specified in the acknowledgement message has addressed the alarm.
1		FAU_SAR.1 (both iterations) is used to provide both the auditor and

		an external audit analysis function the capability to read the entire audit data contained in the audit trail. This requirement also mandates the audit information be presented in a manner that is suitable for the end user (auditor or external system) to interpret the audit trail. It is expected that the audit information be presented in such a way that the end user can examine an audit record and have the appropriate information (that required by FAU_GEN.2-NIAP-410) presented together to facilitate the analysis of the audit review. Ensuring the audit data are presented in an interpretable format will enhance the ability of the entity performing the analysis to identify potential security violations. FAU_SAR.3 complements FAU_SAR.1 by providing the administrators the flexibility to specify criteria that can be used to search or sort the audit records residing in the audit trail. FAU_SAR.3 requires the administrators be able to establish the audit review criteria based on a userid and role so that the actions of a user can be readily identified and analyzed. Allowing the administrators to perform searches or sort the audit records based on dates and times provides the capability to facilitate the administrator's review of incidents that may have taken place at a certain time. It is important to note that the intent of sorting in this requirement is to allow the administrators the capability to organize or group the records associated with a given criteria.
O.CHANGE_MANA GEMENT	ALC_CMC.4 ALC_DVS.1 ALC_FLR.2 ALC_LCD.1	<ul> <li>ALC_CMC.4 contributes to this objective by requiring the developer have a configuration management plan that describes how changes to the TOE and its evaluation deliverables are managed. The developer is also required to employ a configuration management system that operates in accordance with the CM plan and provides the capability to control who on the development staff can make changes to the TOE and its developed evidence. This requirement also ensures that authorized changes to the TOE have been analyzed and the developer's acceptance plan describes how this analysis is performed and how decisions to incorporate the changes to the TOE are made ALC_CSC.4 is necessary to define what items must be under the control of the CM system. This requirement ensures that the TOE implementation representation, design documentation, test documentation (including the executable test suite), user and administrator guidance, CM documentation and security flaws are tracked by the CM system.</li> <li>ALC_DVS.1 requires the developer describe the security measures they employ to ensure the integrity and confidentiality of the TOE is maintained. The physical, procedural, and personnel security measures they employ to ensure the integrity to have procedures that address flaws that have been discovered in the product, either through developer actions (e.g., developer testing) or those discovered by others. The flaw remediation process used by the developer corrects any discovered flaws and performs an analysis to ensure new flaws are not created while fixing the discovered flaws.</li> <li>ALC_LCD.1 requires the developer to document the life-cycle model used in the development and maintenance of the TOE. This life-cycle model used in the development and maintenance of the TOE. This life-cycle model used in the development and maintenance of the could flaws.</li> </ul>

O.CORRECT_ TSF_OPERATION	FPT_TST_(E XT).1, FPT_TST.1(1) FPT_TST.1(2)	how changes to the TOE are reviewed and accepted or rejected. ALC_CMC.4 and ALC_CMS.4 requires that the CM system use an automated means to control changes made to the TOE. If automated tools are used by the developer to analyze, or track changes made to the TOE, those automated tools must be described. This aids in understanding how the CM system enforces the control over changes made to the TOE. O_CORRECT_TSF_OPERATION requires two security functional requirements in the FPT class, FPT_TST. These functional requirements provide the end user with the capability to ensure the TOE's security mechanisms continue to operate correctly in the field. FPT_TST_(EXT).1 has been created to ensure end user tests exist to demonstrate the correct operation of the security mechanisms required by the TOE that are provided by the hardware and that the TOE's software and TSF data has not been corrupted. Hardware failures could render a TOE's software ineffective in enforcing its security policies and this requirement provides the end user the ability to discover any failures in the hardware security mechanisms. FPT_TST.1(1) and FPT_TST.1(2) are necessary to ensure the correctness of the TSF software and TSF data. If TSF software is
		corrupted it is possible that the TSF would no longer be able to enforce the security policies. This also holds true for TSF data, if TSF data is corrupt the TOE may not correctly enforce its security
		policies.
O.CRYPTOGRAPHIC	FCS_BCM_(E	The FCS requirements used in this PP satisfy this objective by
_FUNCTIONS	XT).1	levying requirements that ensure the cryptographic standards include
	FCS_CKM.1(	the NIST FIPS publications (where possible) and NIST approved
	1)	ANSI standards. The intent is to have the satisfaction of the
	FCS_CKM.1(	cryptographic standards be validated through a NIST FIPS 140
	2)	validation.
	FCS_CKM.2	The core functionality to be supported is encryption/decryption using
	FCS CKM.4	a symmetric algorithm, and digital signature generation and
	FCS CKM (E	verification using asymmetric algorithms. Since these operations
	XT).2	involve cryptographic keys, how the keys are generated and/or
	FCS COP.1(1	otherwise obtained have to also be specified.
	) _ `	FCS BCM (EXT).1 is an extended requirement that specifies not
	FCS_COP.1(2	only that cryptographic functions that are FIPS-approved and must be
		validated by FIPS, but also what NIST FIPS rating level the
	FCS_COP.1(3	cryptographic module must satisfy. The level specifies the degree of
	) ECS COD 1/4	module is tested
	$\Gamma CS_COP.1(4)$	<b>ECS</b> CKM $1(1)$ is a requirement that a cruntemedule generate
	FCS COP 1/5	$1 \leftarrow 5 \_ C \times 10^{-11}$ is a requirement that a cryptomodule generate
	)	encryption/decryption functionality specified in ECS COP 1(1)
	)	ECS CKM $1(2)$ is a requirement that a cryptomodule generate
		asymmetric keys. Such keys are used for cryptomodule signatures as
		specified in FCS_COP_1(2)
		FCS_CKM.1 requires that the TSF validate all keys generated to
		assure that it meet relevant standards
		FCS CKM (EXT).2 requires that keys are handled appropriately and
		associated with the correct entities. and that transfer of keys is done
		with error detection. Storage of persistent secret and private keys
		must be done in a secure fashion.
		FCS COP.1(3) requires that the TSF provide hashing services using a
		NIST-approved implementation of the Secure Hash Algorithm and
		FCS_COP.1(4) requires the TSF's message authentication services be

		compliant with either of the NIST-approved approaches, HMAC or
		Another way of obtaining key material for symmetric algorithms is
		through cryptographic key establishment, as specified in
		FCS_COP.1(5). Key establishment has two aspects: key agreement
		and key distribution. Key agreement occurs when two entities
		exchange public data yet arrive at a mutually shared key without ever
		passing that key between the two entities (for example, the Diffie- Hellman algorithm)
		Key distribution (FCS_CKM 2) occurs when the key is transmitted
		from one entity to the TOE. If the entity is electronic and a protocol is
		used to distribute the key, it is referred to in this PP as "Key
		Transport". If the key is loaded into the TOE it can be loaded
		electronically (e.g., from a floppy drive, smart card, or electronic
		keyfill device) or manually (e.g., typed in). One or more of these
		methods must be selected.
		FCS_CKM.4 provides the functionality for ensuring key and key
		material is zeroized. This applies not only to key that resides in the
		TOE, but also to intermediate areas (physical memory, page files,
		memory dumps, etc.) where key may appear.
		encryption and decryption operations ECS_COP 1(2) gives three
		options for providing the digital signature canability: these
		requirements reference the appropriate standards for each digital
		signature option.
	FCS_COP_(E	FCS_COP_(EXT).1 requires that any random number generation and
	XT).1	hashing functions, respectively, are part of a FIPS-validated
		cryptographic module. This requirement does not mandate that the
		functionality is generally available, but only that it be implemented in
		a FIPS-validated module should other cryptographic functions need
	ECS BCM (E	This objective deals with the issue of using EIPS 140.2 approved
VALIDATED	XT) 1	cryptomodules in the TOF. A cryptomodule as used in the
	FCS_CKM.1(	components, is a module that is FIPS 140-2 validated (in accordance
	1)	with FCS BCM (EXT).1); the cryptographic functionality
	FCS_CKM.1(	implemented in that module are FIPS-approved security functions
	2)	that have been validated; and the cryptographic functionality is
		available in a FIPS-approved mode of the cryptomodule. This
		objective is distinguished from O.CRYPTOGRAPHIC_FUNCTIONS
		in that this deals only with a requirement to use FIPS 140-2-validated
		cryptomodules where the TOE requires such functionality; it does not
		dictate the specific functionality that is to be used.
		FCS_BCM_(EX1).1 is an extended requirement that specifies not only that cryptographic functions that are FIPS approved must be
		validated by FIPS, but also what NIST FIPS rating level the
		cryptographic module must satisfy. The level specifies the degree of
		testing of the module. The higher the level, the more extensive the
		module is tested.
		FCS_CKM.1(1) and FCS_CKM.1(2) mandates that the cryptomodule
		must generate key, and that this key generation must be part of the
		FIPS-validated cryptomodule.
O.DISPLAY_BANNE	FTA_TAB.1	FTA_TAB.1 meets this objective by requiring the TOE display a
К		Security Administrator defined banner before a user can establish an
		authenticated session. I his banner is under complete control of the
		unauthorized use of the TOF and remove any product or version
	1	anathorized use of the roll and remove any product or version

		information if they desire.
O.HA	FPT HA (EX	FPT HA (EXT).1 requires that the TOE provide failover capability
	T).1	for configurations that include dual ESPs or RPs.
O.INTEGRITY	FDP IFC.1(1)	O.INTEGRITY (FDP IFC.1(1), FDP IFF.1(1)) satisfies this policy
	FDP IFF. $1(1)$	by ensuring that all IPSec encrypted data received from a peer TOE is
	121_11(1)	properly decrypted and authentication verified.
O.MAINT MODE	FPT RCV.1	This objective is met by using the FPT RCV 2 and FPT RCV 1
	FPT_RCV.2	requirements, which ensures that the TOE does not continue to
	111_100.12	operate in an insecure state when a hardware or software failure
		occurs. Upon the failure of the TSF self-tests the TOE will no longer
		be assured of enforcing its security policies. Therefore, the TOE
		enters a state that operations cease and requires an administrator to
		follow documented procedures that instruct them on to return the
		TOE to a secure state. These procedures may include running
		diagnostics of the hardware or utilities that may correct any integrity
		problems found with the TSE data or code. Solely specifying that the
		administrator reload and install the TOE software from scratch, while
		may be required in some cases, does not meet the intent of this
		requirement
O MANACE INFOR	EMT MCA 1/	The EMT requirements are used to active this more generat chiesting
MATION ELOW	$FWI1_WISA.1($	and other objectives that specify the control of functionality. The
MATION_FLOW	1) EMT MGA 1(	and other objectives that specify the control of functionality. The
(AKA O.MANAGE)	$FWI1_WISA.1($	requirement s rationale for this objective focuses of the
	$\frac{2}{100}$	administrator's capability to perform management functions in order
	$FMI_MSA.3($	to control the behavior of security functions.
	$\frac{1}{1}$	FMT_MSA.1 all provide the Security Administrator the capability to
	FMT_MSA.3(	manipulate the security attributes of the objects in their scope of
	2)	ENTE MGA 2(1) main that has had been to be the the TOE has not all
	FMT_MSA.3(	FM1_MSA.3(1) requires that by default, the TOE does not allow an
	$\frac{3}{100}$	information flow, rather than allowing information flows until a rule
	FMT_MOF.I(	In the ruleset disallows it.
	$\frac{1}{1}$	FM1_MOF.1(2) and FM1_MSA.3(2) are related to the services
	FMT_MOF.1(	provided by FAU_UAU.1 and provide the Security Administrator
	$\frac{2}{100}$	control as to the availability of these services. FMT_MOF.1(2)
	FMT_MOF.1(	Some structure and the services to the
	$\frac{3}{100}$	Security Administrator.
	FM1_MOF.1(	FM1_MSA.3(2) requires that these services by default are disabled.
	$\frac{4}{10}$	Since the Security Administrator must explicitly enable these services
	FM1_MOF.1(	It ensures the Security Administrator is aware that they are running.
	( <b>5</b> )	This requirement does afford the Security Administrator the
	FMT_MOF.1(	capability to override this restrictive default and allow the services to
	$\begin{array}{c} 0 \\ \mathbf{EMT}  \mathbf{MOE} \ 1 \end{array}$	be started whenever the TOE reports or is restarted.
	FM1_MOF.1(	FM1_MSA.5(5) requires that these services by default are disabled.
	$\frac{1}{1}$	Since the Security Administrator must explicitly enable these services
	FMT_MOF.I(	It ensures the Security Administrator is aware that they are running.
	$\frac{\delta}{1}$	I his requirement does afford the Security Administrator the
	$\frac{\text{FWII}_{\text{MII}} D.1(}{1)}$	capability to override this restrictive default and allow the services to
	1) EMT MTD 1/	be stated whenever the TOE reducts of is restarted. EMT_MOE $1(1)$ is used to one up the administrators have the shift.
	1.001 = 0.1(	to involve the TOE solf tests at any time. The shifty to involve the
	2) EMT MTD 1/	to invoke the TOE sen-lesis at any time. The ability to invoke the
	[1000000000000000000000000000000000000	sen-tests is provided to an administrators. The Security Administrator
	3) EMT MTD 1/	is able to modify the behavior of the tests (e.g., select when they fun,
	$\begin{bmatrix} \text{FWII}\_\text{WII}\text{D}.1(\\ 4) \end{bmatrix}$	Select a subset of the tests). EMT MOE $1(2)$ specifies the ability of the administrators to control
	H) EMT CME 1	rivi1_iviOF.1(5) specifies the addition of the administrators to control the security functions associated with audit and alarm concretion. The
	FWII_SWIF.1	the security functions associated with audit and alarm generation. The
1	1	ability to control these functions has been assigned to the appropriate

administrative roles. FMT_MOF.1(6) This requirement limits the ability to manipulate the values that are used in the FRU_RSA.1(2) requirements to the Security Administrator. The Security Administrator is provided the capability to assign the network identifier(s) they wish to place
resource restrictions on and allows them to also specify over what
FMT_MOF.1(4) provides the administrators "read only" access to the audit records and prohibits access to all other users. Additionally, the administrators are provided the capability to "search and sort" audit on defined criteria. This capability expedites problem resolution
FMT_MOF.1(5) ensures that only an administrators can "enable or
disable" the security alarms. This requirement works with
FMT_MOF.1(5) to provide detailed granularity to the administrator when determining which actions constitute a security violation. FMT_MOF.1(6) provides the Security Administration configuration control of the allocation of connection oriented TOE recourses. This
requirement provides the Security Administrator with a capability to
FMT_MOF.1(7) provides the Security Administration configuration
control of unsuccessful authentication attempts The requirement EMT, MTD $1(1)$ is intended to be used by the ST
author with possible iterations to address TSF data that has not
already been specified by other FMT requirements. This is necessary
because the ST author may add TSF data in assignments that cannot
be addressed ahead of time by the PP authors. This requirement
specifies that the manipulation of these data be restricted to the
Security administrator. EMT MOE $1(8)$ ensures that only an administrators can "enable
disable, determine and modify the behavior" the failure handling.
FMT_MTD.1(2) provides the Cryptographic Administrator, and only the Cryptographic Administrator, the ability to modify the
cryptographic security data. This allows the Cryptographic Administrator to change the critical data that affects the TOE's ability
to perform its cryptographic functions properly. EMT. MTD $1/2$ provides the comphility of setting the data and time
that is used to generate time stamps to the Security Administrator. It is important to allow this functionality, due to clock drift and other circumstances, but the capability must be restricted
FMT_MTD.1(4) addresses the capabilities of data managers, who
have responsibilities for security data management for sub-portions of
the set of TSF data (for example, the platform clock time, sub- hierarchies of the directory). The scope of a data manager's
responsibility is set by a security administrator, but they are expected
to manage the entities in their scope of control without reliance on the security administrator.
FMT_MTD.2(1), FMT_MTD.2(2), FMT_MTD.2(3) restrict the
setting of limits on the processor time, network connection resources
and audit storage minis respectively, to an administrator. This capability allows an administrator to control the resources consumed
by, to provide a flexible policy with respect to denial of service
The requirement FMT SMF.1 was introduced as an international
interpretation. This requirement specifies functionality that must be provided to administrators of the TOE. If the PP author includes this

		requirement, care must be taken to use the other FMT requirements to
		specify how the functionality is restricted and to which role the
		functionality is provided.
O.MEDIATE_INFOR	FDP_IFC.1(1)	The FDP_IFF and FDP_IFC requirements were chosen to define the
MATION_FLOW	FDP_IFC.1(2)	policies, the subjects, objects, and operations for how and when
(AKA O.MEDIATE)	FDP_IFC.1(4)	mediation takes place.
	FDP_IFF.1(1)	FDP_IFC.1(1) - (4) define the subjects, information (e.g., objects)
	FDP_IFF.1(2)	and the operations that are performed with respect to the two
	FDP_IFF.1(4	information flow policies.
	FMT_REV.1	FDP IFC.1(1), the subjects are the TOE's network interfaces. The
	ADV ARC.1	objects are defined as the network IP packets on which the TOE
	_	performs VPN operations. As packets enter the TOE, the network
		interface where they are received is the source subject. As packets are
		sent out of the TOE the network interface that they are sent out of is
		the destination subject. Subjects must be defined as entities that the
		TOE has control over. The TOE has control over its own network
		interfaces such that it can make information flow decisions to
		allow/disallow network packets to flow from in incoming interface to
		an outgoing interface, and can apply VPN operations to packets that
		are allowed to flow. To define subjects as the senders and receivers of
		network packets would not allow specification of an information flow
		policy that the TOE could enforce, since the sender and receiver of
		network packets are not under the control of the TOE. The operations
		defined are those of the VPN policy. The VPN policy either passes
		information unmodified, sends encrypted and authenticated packets to
		a peer TOE, or decrypts and verifies authentication of packets
		received from a peer TOE.
		FDP_IFF.1(1) specifies the attributes on which VPN information
		flow decisions are made. Each TOE interface has a set of source
		subject identifiers that is the list of senders of information packets
		that are allowed to send packets to this TOE interface. Each TOE
		interface also has a list of destination subject identifiers that specifies
		the receivers that network packets can be sent to on that IOE
		the TOE determines if there are allowed to enter an that interface,
		Then been a miles defined by the Security Administrator the TOF
		I nen based on rules defined by the Security Administrator, the TOE
		applies VPN operations to the packet. Before the packet is sent out of
		a particular network interface, the TOE determines if the destination
		(i.e., receiver) of the packet is in the list of destinations that may be
		EDD IEC 1(2) defines subjects for the unauthenticated access to any
		services the TOE provides. This is different from the other policies in
		that the TOE mediates access to itself rather than determining if
		information should be allowed to flow through the TOF. The
		destination subject is defined to be the TOE and the source subject is
		the TOE interface on which a network packet is received. The
		information remains the same, a network packet, and the operations
		are limited to accept or reject the packet.
		FDP_IFF.1(2) provides the rules that apply to the unauthenticated use
		of any services provided by the TOE. ICMP is the only service that is
		required to be provided by the TOE, and the security attributes
		associated with this protocol allow the Security Administrator to
		specify what degree the ICMP traffic is mediated (i.e., the ICMP
		message type and code). The ST author could specify other services
		they wish their TOE implementation to provide, and if they do so,
		they should also specify the security attributes associated with the

additional services. FMT REV.1 is a management requirement that
affords the Security Administrator the ability to immediately revoke
user's shility to send network traffic to or through the TOE
user s donny to send network traffic to or unough the TOE. EDD IEC $1(4)$ the subjects are defined to be a sense birth $1/4$ .
FDP_IFC.1(4), the subjects are defined to be a source subject, which
is the TOE's network interface on which a packet is received, and a
destination subject, which is the TOE's network interface on which
the packet is destined. The information flow control requirements are
not well suited for a firewall. This subject determination was made
since the TOE network interfaces are something the TOE has control
over (a.g. the administrator has the ability to assign natural
over (e.g., the administrator has the admity to assign network
identifiers to these interfaces, which is a critical component in the
mediation decision) and rules could be identified in FDP_IFF.1(4)
that make sense with respect to mediation of information. The
alternative was to classify the sender and receiver of the data packets
as subjects, but the sender and receiver are not under the control of
the TOE and would not make sense to perform mediation under those
circumstances. The objects in this policy are defined to be the
notwork packate, since that is the antity that the operations are
network packets, since that is the entity that the operations are
performed on. Those operations are to pass the information if the
mediation allows the flow, otherwise the packet is dropped.
FDP_IFF.1(4) is used to specify the policy of unauthenticated traffic
flowing through the TOE. This requirement ensures that the network
traffic is mediated (i.e., the ruleset is used) even though the subjects
have not been authenticated. This requirement also mandates the TOE
perform stateful inspection of the packets to determine if they should
be allowed to flow through the TOE. The stateful inspection attributes
are not intended to specifiable by the Security Administrator, rather
these attributes are to be "managed" and mediated internally by the
TOE
TUE.
FMT_REV.1 is a management requirement that affords the Security
Administrator the ability to immediately revoke user's ability to send
network traffic to or through the TOE.
If the Security Administrator revokes a user's access (e.g., via a rule
in the ruleset, revoking an administrative role from a user) the TOE
will immediately enforce the new Security Administrator defined
"nolicy" ADV ARC 1 describes an architecture that ensures nackets
that flow through the TOE or those that are destined for the TOE are
mat now unough the 10E, of those that are destined for the 10E are
mediated with respect to the identified policies. Each 1 SF interface
that operates on subjects or objects that are identified in the explicit
policies, or operates on TSF data or security attributes, must ensure
that the operation is checked against the explicit and implicit security
policies defined in this PP. If any TSF interface allows unchecked
access to any of these resources, then the TOE cannot be relied upon
to enforce the security policies.
ADV ARC 1 provides the security architecture description of the
security domains maintained by the TSE that are consistent with the
SEBs. Since self protection is a property of the TSE that is achieved
STRS. Since sen-protection is a property of the TSF that is achieved
unough the design of the TOE and TSF, and enforced by the correct
implementation of that design, self-protection will be achieved by
that design and implementation. This will ensure that packets that
flow through the TOE, or those that are destined for the TOE are
mediated with respect to the identified policies. Each TSF interface
that operates on subjects or objects that are identified in the explicit
policies, or operates on TSF data or security attributes, must ensure
that the operation is checked against the explicit and implicit security
policies defined in this PP. If any TSE interface allows unchecked

		access to any of these resources, then the TOE cannot be relied upon
		to enforce the security policies.
O.PEER_AUTHENTI	FCS_IKE_(EX	The O.PEER_AUTHENTICATION objective is satisfied by the
CATION	T).1	requirement FCS_IKE_(EXT).1, which specifies that the TOE must
		implement the Internet Key Exchange protocol defined in RFC 2409.
		By implementing this protocol, the TOE will establish a secure,
		authenticated channel with each peer TOE for purposes of
		establishing a security association, which includes the establishment
		of a cryptographic key, algorithm and mode to be used for all
		communication. It is possible to establish multiple security
		associations between two peer TOEs, each with its own cryptographic
		key. Authentication may be via a digital signature or pre-shared key.
	FCS_GDOI_(	The O.PEER_AUTHENTICATION objective is satisfied by the
	EXT).1	requirement FCS_GDOI_(EXT).1, which specifies that the TOE must
		implement the Group Domain of Interpretation protocol defined in
		RFC 3547. By implementing this protocol, the TOE will establish a
		secure, authenticated channel with groups of peer TOEs for purposes
		of establishing a security association, which includes the
		establishment of a cryptographic key, algorithm and mode to be used
		for all communication.
O.PROTECT_IN_TR	FPT_ITA.1	FPT_ITA.1, FPT_ITC.1 and FPT_ITI.1 are concerned with the
ANSIT	FPT_ITC.1	availability, confidentiality and integrity of the TSF data while being
	FPT_ITI.1	transmitted.
	FTP_ITC.1(1)	FTP_ITC.1(1) and FTP_ITC.1(2) ensures that all TSF data will be
	FTP_ITC.1(2)	protected from disclosure while in transit from the TOE to another
	FTP_TRP.1(1)	trusted IT entity.
	$FTP_TRP.1(2)$	FTP_TRP.1(1) and FTP_TRP.1(2) will use cryptographic means to
		provide prevention of disclosure and detection of modification of TSF
		data.
0.PROTOCOLS	FPI_FLS.I	The O.PROTOCOLS objective is satisfied by FP1_PRO_(EX1).1,
	FPI_PRO_(E	which requires that the TOE be implemented with standardized
	A1).1	protocols to ensure interoperating among peer TOEs. Implementing
		(EPT ELS 1) of the TOE is maintained
O REPLAY DETECT	FDT DDI 1	The O REPLAN DETECTION objective is satisfied by EPT RPL 1
ION	111_KL.1	which requires the TOE to detect and reject the attempted replay of
ION		authentication data from a remote user. This is sufficient to meet the
		objective because no untrusted users have local access to the TOF
		thus there is no way to canture neither replay authentication data for a
		local session
O RESIDUAL INFO	FDP RIP 2	FDP RIP 2 is used to ensure the contents of resources are not
RMATION	FCS_CKM4	available to subjects other than those explicitly granted access to the
Num III OIV	FCS_CKM_(E	data For this TOE it is critical that the memory used to build network
	$TCD_cini_(L)$	nackets is either cleared or that some buffer management scheme be
	111).2	employed to prevent the contents of a packet being disclosed in a
		subsequent packet (e.g. if padding is used in the construction of a
		nacket it must not contain another user's data or TSF data)
		FCS CKM.4 applies to the destruction of cryptographic keys used by
		the TSF. This requirement specifies how and when cryptographic
		keys must be destroyed. The proper destruction of these keys is
		critical in ensuring the content of these kevs cannot possibly be
		disclosed when a resource is reallocated to a user.
O.RESOURCE SHA	FRU_RSA.1(1	While an availability security policy does not explicitly exist.
RING	)	FRU_RSA.1 was used to mitigate potential resource exhaustion
	FRU RSA.1(2	attempts, FRU RSA.1(1) was used to reduce the impact of an attempt

	) FMT_MTD.2( 1) FMT_MTD.2( 2) FMT_MOF.1 (6) FMT_MOF.1( 7)	being made to exhaust the transport-layer representation (e.g., attempt to make the TSF unable to respond to connection-oriented requests, such as SYN attacks). This requirement allows the administrator to specify the time period in which when maximum quota (which is defined by the ST) is met or surpassed, an ST defined action is to take place, which is specified in FMT_MTD.2(1). These two requirements together help limit the resources that can be utilized by the general population of users as a whole. An issue with treating all the users the same is that legitimate users may not be able to establish connections due to the connection table entries being exhausted. Therefore FRU_RSA.1(2) is also included. FRU_RSA.1(2) is more specific in that attempts to exhaust the connection-oriented resources by a single network address, or a set of network addresses can be controlled. This affords the administrator a finer granularity of control than FRU_RSA.1(1). FRU_RSA.1(2) has the advantage of providing the Security Administrator with the ability to define the maximum number of resources a particular address or set of addresses can use over a specified time period. This requirement works in conjunction with FMT_MTD.2(2) which restricts the ability to set the quotas to the security administrator and allows for the ST author to assign what actions will take place once the quotas are met or surpassed. This iteration of FPT_RSA.1 makes it less likely that a legitimate user of the TOE will be denied access due to resource exhaustion attempts. FMT_MOF.1(6) and (7) restricts the ability to assign the single network address or set of network addresses used in FRU_RSA.1(2) to the Security Administrator. This is in keeping with the TOE's
O.ROBUST_ADMIN_ GUIDANCE	ALC_DEL.1 AGD_PRE.1 AGD_OPE.1	TOE's policy enforcement mechanisms. ALC_DEL.1 ensures that the administrator is provided documentation that instructs them how to ensure the delivery of the TOE, in whole or in parts, has not been tampered with or corrupted during delivery. This requirement ensures the administrator has the ability to begin their TOE installation with a clean (e.g., malicious code has not been inserted once it has left the developer's control) version of the TOE, which is necessary for secure management of the TOE. The AGD_PRE.1 requirement ensures the administrator has the information necessary to install the TOE in the evaluated configuration. Often times a vendor's product contains software that is not part of the TOE and has not been evaluated. The Operational Users Guidance and the Preparative procedures ensure that once the administrator has followed the installation and configuration guidance the result is a TOE in a secure configuration. The AGD_OPE.1 requirement mandates the developer provide the administrator with guidance on how to operate the TOE in a secure manner. This includes describing the interfaces the administrator uses in managing the TOE, security parameters that are configurable by the administrator, how to configure the TOE's ruleset and the implications of any dependencies of individual rules. The documentation also provides a description of how to setup and review the auditing features of the TOE. The AGD_OPE.1 is also intended for non-administrative users, but could be used to provide guidance on security that is common to both administrators and non-administrators (e.g., password management guidelines).

		FIA UAU.2 requires that administrators and authorized IT entities
		authenticate themselves to the TOE before performing any TSE-
		mediated actions. In order to control logical access to the TOE an
		authentication mechanism is required. The extended requirement
		FIA UAU (EXT) 5 mandates that the TOE provide a local
		authentication mechanism. This requirement also affords the ST
		author the opportunity to add additional authentication mechanisms
		(a, a) single use certificates) if they desire
		Local authentication is required to ensure someone that has physical
		access to the TOE and has not been granted logical access (e.g. a
		ignitor) connot goin unauthorized logical access to the TOE
		ETA TSE 1.1 contributes to this objective by limiting a user's ability
		to logically access the TOE. This requirement provides the Security
		A dministrator the shility to control when (a g, time and day(g) of the
		Administrator the admity to control when (e.g., time and day(s) of the
		week) and where (e.g., from a specific fieldwork address) remote
		administrators, as and authorized 11 entities can access the TOE.
		FIA_AFL.1 provides a detection mechanism for unsuccessful
		authentication attempts by remote administrators, and authorized 11
		entities. The requirement enables a Security Administrator settable
		threshold that prevents unauthorized users from gaining access to
		authorized user's account by guessing authentication data by locking
		the targeted account until the Security Administrator takes some
		action (e.g., re-enables the account) or for some Security
		Administrator defined time period. Thus, limiting an unauthorized
		user's ability to gain unauthorized access to the TOE.
		The FTA_SSL family partially satisfies the
		O.ROBUST_TOE_ACCESS objective by ensuring that user's
		sessions are afforded some level of protection. FTA_SSL.3 takes into
		account remote sessions. After a Security Administrator defined time
		interval of inactivity remote sessions will be terminated. This
		includes user remote administrative sessions. This component is
		especially necessary; since remote sessions are not typically afforded
		the same physical protections those local sessions are provided.
O.ROBUST_TOE_AC	FIA_AFL.I	FIA_UID.2 plays a small role in satisfying this objective by ensuring
CESS	FIA_ATD.1(1)	that every user is identified before the TOE performs any mediated
	FIA_ATD.1(2)	functions. In some cases, the identification cannot be authenticated
	FIA_UAU.I	(e.g., a user attempting to send a data packet through the TOE that
	FIA_UAU.2	does not require authentication; in which case the identity is
	FIA_UAU_(E	presumed to be authentic). In other cases (e.g., proxy users,
	XT).5	administrators, and authorized IT entities), the identity of the user is
	FIA_UID.2	authenticated. It is impractical to require authentication of all users
	FTA_SSL.1	that attempt to send data through the TOE, therefore, the
	FIA_SSL.2	requirements specified in the TOE require authentication where it is
	FIA_SSL.3	deemed necessary. This does impose some risk that a data packet was
	FIA_ISE.I	sent from an identity other than specified in the data packet.
	$AVA_VAN.3$	FIA_AID.1 defines the attributes of users, including a userid that is
		used to by the TOE to determine a user's identity and enforce what
		type of access the user has to the TOE (e.g., the TOE associates a
		useria with any role(s) they may assume). This requirement allows a
		numan user to nave more than one user identity assigned, so that a
		single numan user could assume all the roles necessary to manage the
		TOE. In order to ensure a separation of roles, this PP requires a single
		role to be associated with a user id. This is inconvenient in that the
		auministrator would be required to log in with a different user 1d each
		time mey wish to assume a uniferent role, but this helps mitigate the
		risk that could occur if an administrator were to execute malicious

	code. FIA_UAU.1 contributes to this objective by limiting the services that are provided by the TOE to unauthenticated users. Management requirements and the unauthenticated information flow policy requirement provide additional control on these services. FIA_UAU.2 was refined since only the VPN only requires that administrators, authorized IT entities and proxy users authenticate themselves to the TOE before performing administrative duties or using the proxy services identified in this requirement. Unlike the unauthenticated proxies, these proxies require authentication, which provides a level of control on who can access the proxies and reduces the potential risk to the TOE. In order to control logical access to the TOE an authentication
	mechanism is required. The extended requirement FIA_UAU_(EXT).5 mandates that the TOE provide a local authentication mechanism. This requirement also affords the ST
	author the opportunity to add additional authentication mechanisms (e.g., single-use, certificates) if they desire. Local authentication is required to ensure someone that has physical access to the TOE and has not been granted logical access (e.g., a
	janitor) cannot gain unauthorized logical access to the TOE. The AVA_VAN.3 requirement as applied to the local authentication mechanism. The evaluator performs penetration testing, to confirm that the potential vulnerabilities cannot be exploited in the operational
	environment for the TOE. Penetration testing is performed by the evaluator assuming an attack potential of moderate. This requirement ensures the evaluator has performed an analysis of the authentication mechanism to ensure the probability of guessing a user's authentication data would require a high-attack potential, as defined
	in Annex B of the CEM. FTA_TSE.1.1 contributes to this objective by limiting a user's ability to logically access the TOE. This requirement provides the Security Administrator the ability to control when (e.g., time and day(s) of the week) and where (e.g., from a specific network address) remote
	administrators, as well as proxy users and authorized IT entities can access the TOE.
	authentication attempts by remote administrators, authenticated proxy users and authorized IT entities. The requirement enables a Security Administrator settable threshold that prevents unauthorized users from gaining access to authorized user's account by guessing
	authentication data by locking the targeted account by guessing authentication data by locking the targeted account until the Security Administrator takes some action (e.g., re-enables the account) or for some Security Administrator defined time period. Thus, limiting an unauthorized user's ability to gain unauthorized access to the TOE. The FTA_SSL family partially satisfies the
	O.ROBUST_TOE_ACCESS objective by ensuring that user's sessions are afforded some level of protection. FTA_SSL.1 provides the Security Administrator the capability to specify a time interval of inactivity in which an unattended local administrative session would be locked and will require the administrator responsible for that session to re-authenticate before the session can be used to access
	TOE resources. FTA_SSL.2 provides administrators the ability to lock their local administrative session. This component allows administrators to protect their session immediately, rather than waiting for the time-out period and minimizes their session's risk of

		exposure. FTA_SSL.3 takes into account remote sessions. After a Security Administrator defined time interval of inactivity remote sessions will be terminated, this includes user proxy sessions and remote administrative sessions. This component is especially necessary, since remote sessions are not typically afforded the same physical protections that local sessions are provided.
O.SELF_PROTECTIO N	ADV_ARC.1	ADV_ARC.1 will require an architecture that ensure the TSF provides a domain that protects itself from untrusted users. If the TSF cannot protect itself it cannot be relied upon to enforce its security policies. ADV_ARC.1 also provides an architecture to ensure that the cryptographic module be provided its own address space. This is necessary to reduce the impact of programming errors in the remaining portions of the TSF on the cryptographic module. The inclusion of ADV_ARC.1 ensures that the TSF makes policy decisions on all interfaces that perform operations on subjects and objects that are scoped by the policies. Without this non-bypassability requirement, the TSF could not be relied upon to completely enforce the security policies, since an interface(s) may otherwise exist that would provide a user with access to TOE resources (including TSF data and executable code) regardless of the defined policies. This includes controlling the accessibility to interfaces, and what access control is provided within the interfaces.
	FTP_ITC.1(2) FTP_TRP.1(1) FTP_TRP.1(2)	necessary for communication between the TOE and other trusted IT entities (e.g., authentication server, authorized IT entities) and the TOE and remote administrators. In order to protect TSF data and security attributes there is need for a trusted channel/trusted path. The trusted channel ensures that the authentication data that is supplied to the TOE is not compromised. It may be the case that the TOE relies upon an authorized IT entity to supply/manage TSF data (e.g., time stamp). If this is the case, the trusted channel ensures the TSF data is not compromised. The aspect of the trusted path that applies to this objective is FTP_TRP.1.3, which requires that the entire remote administrative session be protected. The protection of the communication path when TSF data is being transmitted is critical to the TSF maintaining a domain of execution that cannot be tampered or interfered with, thus resulting is a possible unauthorized disclosure or security policy failure.
O.SOUND_DESIGN	ADV_ARC.1 ADV_FSP.4 ADV_TDS.3	There are two different perspectives for this objective. One is from the developer's point of view and the other is from the evaluator's. The ADV class of requirements is levied to aide in the understanding of the design for both parties, which ultimately helps to ensure the design is sound. ADV_ARC.1 addresses the non-bypassability and domain separation aspects of the TSF, since this needs to be analyzed differently from other requirements. The low-level design, as required by ADV_TDS.3, provides the reader with the details of the TOE's

		design and describes at a module level how the design of the TOE
		addresses the SFRs. This level of description provides the detail of
		how modules interact within the TOE and if a flaw exists in the
		TOE's design: it is more likely to be found here rather than the high-
		level design. This requirement also mandates that the interfaces
		presented by modules be specified. Having knowledge of the
		presented by modules be specified. Having knowledge of the
		parameters a module accepts, the errors that can be returned and a
		description of how the module works to support the security policies
		allows the design to be understood at its lowest level.
		ATE_DPT.1AVA_VAN.3ADV_FSP.4 requires that the interfaces to
		the TSF be completely specified. In this TOE, a complete
		specification of the network interface (including the network interface
		card) is critical in understanding what functionality is presented to
		untrusted users and how that functionality fits into the enforcement of
		security policies. Some network protocols have inherent flaws and
		users have the ability to provide the TOE with network packets
		crafted to take advantage of these flaws. The routines/functions that
		process the fields in the network protocols allowed (e.g. TCP LIPD
		ICMP any application level) must fully specified: the accentable
		normators the errors that can be generated, and what if any
		parameters, the errors that can be generated, and what, if any,
		exceptions exist in the processing. The functional specification of the
		nardware interface (e.g., network interface card) is also extremely
		critical. Any processing that is externally visible performed by NIC
		must be specified in the functional specification. Having a complete
		understanding of what is available at the TSF interface allows one to
		analyze this functionality in the context of design flaws.
		ADV_TDS.3 requires that design of the TOE be provided. This level
		of design describes the architecture of the TOE in terms of
		subsystems. It identifies which subsystems are responsible for making
		and enforcing security relevant (e.g., anything relating to an SFR)
		decisions and provides a description, at a high level, of how those
		decisions are made and enforced. Having this level of description
		helps provide a general understanding of how the TOE works
		without getting buried in details, and may allow the reader to discover
		flows in the design
		ADV TDS 2 also provides the reader with the details of the TOE's
		ADV_IDS.5 also provides the reader with the details of the TOE's
		design and describes at a module level now the design of the TOE
		addresses the SFRs. This level of description provides the detail of
		how modules interact within the TOE and if a flaw exists in the
		TOE's design, it is more likely to be found here rather than the high-
		level design. This requirement also mandates that the interfaces
		presented by modules be specified. Having knowledge of the
		parameters a module accepts, the errors that can be returned and a
		description of how the module works to support the security policies
		allows the design to be understood at its lowest level.
O.SOUND_IMPLEM	ADV_IMP.1	While ADV_TDS.3 is used to aide in ensuring that the TOE's design
ENTATION	ADV_ARC.1	is sound, it also contributes to ensuring the implementation is
	ADV_TDS.3	correctly realized from the design. It is expected that evaluators will
		use the low-level design as an aide in understanding the
	ALC_TAT.1	implementation representation. The low-level design requirements
	_	ensure the evaluators have enough information to intelligently
		analyze (e.g., the documented interface descriptions of the modules
		match the entry points in the module. error codes returned by the
		functions in the module are consistent with those identified in the
		documentation) the implementation and ensure it is consistent with
		the design.

		ADV_IMP.2 was chosen to ensure evaluators have full access to the source code. If the evaluators are limited in their ability to analyze source code they may not be able to determine the accuracy of the implementation or the adequacy of the documentation. Often times it is difficult for an evaluator to identify the complete sample of code they wish to analyze. Often times looking at code in one subsystem may lead the evaluator to discover code they should look at in another subsystem. Rather than require the evaluator to "re-negotiate" another sample of code, the complete implementation representation is required. ALC_TAT.1 provides evaluators with information necessary to understand the implementation representation and what the resulting implementation will consist of. Critical areas (e.g., the use of libraries, what definitions are used, compiler options) are documented so the evaluator can determine how the implementation representation representation and what the resulted so the evaluator can determine how the implementation representation representation are used.
O.THOROUGH_ FUNCTIONAL_TEST ING	ATE_COV.3 ATE_FUN.1 ATE_DPT.1 ATE_IND.2	In order to satisfy O.FUNCTIONAL_TESTING, the ATE class of requirements is necessary. The component ATE_FUN.1 requires the developer to provide the necessary test documentation to allow for an independent analysis of the developer's security functional test coverage. In addition, the developer must provide the test suite executables and source code, which are used for independently verifying the test suite results and in support of the test coverage analysis activities. ATE_COV.3 requires the developer to provide a test coverage analysis that demonstrates the TSFI are completely addressed by the developer's test suite. While exhaustive testing of the TSFI is not required, this component ensures that the security functionality of each TSFI is addressed. This component also requires an independent confirmation of the completeness of the test suite, which aids in ensuring that correct security relevant functionality of a TSFI is demonstrated through the testing effort. ATE_DPT.1 requires the developer to provide a test coverage analysis that demonstrates depth of coverage of the test suite. This component complements ATE_COV.3 by ensuring that the developer takes into account the high-level and low-level design when developing their test suite. Since exhaustive testing of the TSFI is not requires an independent confirmation are addressed in the test suite. ATE_IND.2 requires an independent confirmation of the test suite. ATE_IND.2 requires an independent confirmation of the test suite. ATE_IND.2 requires an independent confirmation of the test suite be run by an independent party. This component also requires an independent party. This component also requires an independent party. This component the test suite be run by an independent party. This component also requires an independent party to attempt to craft functional tests that address functional behavior that is not demonstrated in the developer's test suite. Upon successful adherence to these requirements, the TOE's conformance to themostrated.
O.TIME_STAMPS	FPT_STM.1 FMT_MTD.1( 3)	FPT_STM.1 requires that the TOE be able to provide reliable time stamps for its own use and therefore, partially satisfies this objective. Time stamps include date and time and are reliable in that they are always available to the TOE, and the clock must be monotonically increasing. FMT_MTD.1(3) satisfies the rest of this objective by providing the
O.TRUSTED_PATH	FTP_ITC.1(1),	<ul><li>capability to set the time used for generating time stamps to either the Security Administrator, authorized IT entity, or both, depending on the selection made by the ST author.</li><li>FTP_TRP.1.1 requires the TOE to provide a mechanism that creates a</li></ul>

	FTP ITC.1(2)	distinct communication path that protects the data that traverses this
	FTP TRP.1(1)	path from disclosure or modification. This requirement ensures that
	· · · · _ · · · ( · )	the TOE can identify the end points and ensures that a user cannot
	, FTP TPP 1(2)	insert themselves between the user and the TOE by requiring that the
	$111_1(2)$	magne used for invoking the communication path cannot be
		intersected and allows a "man in the middle attack" (this does not
		intercepted and allow a man-in-the-middle-attack (this does not
		prevent someone from capturing the traffic and replaying it at a later
		time – see FPT_RPL.1). Since the user invokes the trusted path
		(FTP_TRP.1.2) mechanism they can be assured they are
		communicating with the TOE. FTP_TRP.1.3 mandates that the
		trusted path be the only means available for providing identification
		and authentication information, therefore ensuring a user's
		authentication data will not be compromised when performing
		authentication functions. Furthermore the remote administrator's
		communication nath is encrypted during the entire session
		ETP ITC 1(1) and ETP ITC 1(2) are similar to ETP TRP 1(1) and
		ETD TDD $1(2)$ in that they require a machanism that creates a
		distinct communication noth with the same characteristics, however
		TTD TTC 1(1) 1 TTD TTC 1(2)
		FIP_IIC.1(1) and FIP_IIC.1(2) is used to protect communications
		between IT entities, rather than between a human user and an IT
		entity. FTP_ITC.1.3 requires the TOE to initiate the trusted channel,
		which ensures that the TOE has established a communication path
		with an authorized IT entity and not some other entity pretending to
		be an authorized IT entity.
O.USER_GUIDANCE	AGD_PRE.1	O.USER_GUIDANCE (AGD_PRE.1) mitigates this threat by
		providing the user the information necessary to use the security
		mechanisms that control access to user data in a secure manner. For
		instance, the method by which the discretionary access control
		mechanism (FDP_ACC_1_FDP_ACE_1) is configured and how to
		apply it to the data the user owns, is described in the user guidance. If
		this information were not available to the user the information may
		ha left unprotected, or the user may mis configure the controls and
		wintentionally allow upouthorized access to their data
		unintentionally allow unauthorized access to their data.
O.VULNERABILITY	AVA_VAN.3	To maintain consistency with the overall assurance goals of this TOE,
_ANALYSIS_TEST		O.VULNERABILITY_ANALYSIS_TEST requires the
		AVA_VAN.3 component to provide the necessary level of
		confidence that vulnerabilities do not exist in the TOE that could
		cause the security policies to be violated. AVA_VAN.3 requires the
		developer to perform a systematic search for potential vulnerabilities
		in all the TOE deliverables. For those vulnerabilities that are not
		eliminated, a rationale must be provided that describes why these
		vulnerabilities cannot be exploited by a threat agent with a moderate
		attack potential, which is in keeping with the desired assurance level
		of this TOE. As with the functional testing, a key element in this
		component is that an independent assessment of the completeness of
		the developer's analysis is made, and more importantly, an
		independent vulnerability analysis counled with testing of the TOE is
		nacpendent vulnerability analysis coupled with testing of the TOE is
		flaws do not exist in the TOE that could be explained have the
		naws do not exist in the TOE that could be exploited by a threat agent
		of moderate (or lower) attack potential to violate the IOE's security
		policies.

#### 7.4 RATIONALE FOR THE SECURITY OBJECTIVES AND SECURITY FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE ENVIRONMENT

The purpose for the environmental objectives is to provide protection for the TOE that cannot be addressed through IT measures. The defined objectives provide for physical protection of the TOE and proper management of the TOE. Together with the IT security objectives, these environmental objectives provide a complete description of the responsibilities of TOE in meeting security needs.

All but one of the security objectives for the environment, OE.CRYPTANALYTIC, are restatements of an assumption found in Section 3. Therefore, those security objectives for the non-IT environment trace to the assumptions trivially and are suitable for covering the assumptions.

The IT environment security objective OE.CRYPTANALYTIC is necessary to play a role in countering the threat T.CRYPTO\_COMPROMISE. This IT environment security objective ensures that the cryptographic methods used in the IT environment are interoperable with the mechanisms provided by the TOE. The IT environment's cryptographic methods should be independently validated to be FIPS 140-2 compliant. OE.CRYPTANALYTIC maps to the IT environmental iterated requirements FPT\_ITC.1 (ensuring that encryption is used on the communication channel between authorized IT entities and the TOE), and FPT\_TRP (ensuring that an administrator and authenticated proxy users can be assured that they are communicating with the TOE).

# **ANNEX A: REFERENCES**

## 7.5 References

The following documentation was used to prepare this ST:

Table 31: References

[CC_PART1]	Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation – Part 1: Introduction and general model, dated July 2009, version 3.1, Revision 3, CCMB-2009-07-001
[CC_PART2]	Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation – Part 2: Security functional components, dated July 2009, version 3.1, Revision 3, CCMB2009-07-002
[CC_PART3]	Common Criteria for Information Technology Security Evaluation – Part 3: Security assurance components, dated July 2009, version 3.1, Revision 3, CCMB-2009-07-003
[CEM]	Common Methodology for Information Technology Security Evaluation – Evaluation Methodology, dated July 2009, version 3.1, Revision 3, CCMB-2009-07-004